



गणित Mathematics

कक्षा / Class XI
2026-27

विद्यार्थी सहायक सामग्री
Student Support Material

संदेश

शिक्षा केवल पुस्तकों तक सीमित ज्ञान नहीं है; यह स्वयं को पहचानने, अपने विचारों को विस्तार देने और जीवन की चुनौतियों का आत्मविश्वास से सामना करने की सतत यात्रा है। केन्द्रीय विद्यालय संगठन का सदैव यह प्रयास रहा है कि प्रत्येक विद्यार्थी के लिए ऐसा शिक्षण वातावरण हो, जहाँ जिज्ञासा को प्रोत्साहन मिले, सीखना आनंददायी बने और प्रत्येक बालक अपनी अंतर्निहित क्षमताओं को पहचानकर उन्हें विकसित कर सके।

राष्ट्रीय शिक्षा नीति 2020 ने शिक्षा को सिर्फ रटने से समझने, सूचना से ज्ञान और ज्ञान से जीवनोपयोगी दक्षताओं की ओर अग्रसर किया है। आज का समय कृत्रिम बुद्धिमत्ता (Artificial Intelligence – AI), डिजिटल नवाचार और निरंतर बदलती तकनीकों का है। ऐसे युग में केवल तथ्यों का ज्ञान पर्याप्त नहीं है; आवश्यक है कि विद्यार्थी मनन- चिंतन करना सीखें, प्रश्न पूछें, समस्याओं का समाधान खोजें और नए विचारों के साथ आगे बढ़ें। यही क्षमताएँ उन्हें भविष्य के लिए तैयार करेंगी।

इन्हीं उद्देश्यों को ध्यान में रखते हुए केन्द्रीय विद्यालय संगठन के पाँचों आंचलिक शिक्षा एवं प्रशिक्षण संस्थानों (ZIETs) के माध्यम से, समर्पित एवं अनुभवी शिक्षकों द्वारा कक्षा 9 से 12 के विद्यार्थियों के लिए यह विद्यार्थी सहायक सामग्री तैयार की गई है। यह केवल परीक्षा की तैयारी की संकलन सामग्री नहीं है, बल्कि विषयों को सरलता से समझने, अवधारणाओं को स्पष्ट करने, नियमित अभ्यास करने और आत्मविश्वास के साथ आगे बढ़ने का एक विश्वसनीय साथी है।

इस सामग्री में विषय-वस्तु को विद्यार्थियों की आवश्यकताओं के अनुरूप सरल, व्यवस्थित एवं दक्षता-आधारित दृष्टिकोण से प्रस्तुत किया गया है। मुझे प्रसन्नता है कि इसे हमारे शिक्षकों के अनुभव, नवाचार और विद्यार्थियों के प्रति उनकी प्रतिबद्धता ने समृद्ध बनाया है। मुझे विश्वास है कि यह सामग्री विद्यार्थियों की सीखने की यात्रा को अधिक सहज, रोचक और प्रभावी बनाएगी तथा उन्हें बोर्ड परीक्षाओं के साथ-साथ जीवन की व्यापक चुनौतियों के लिए भी तैयार करेगी।

मेरा विश्वास है कि जब एक जिज्ञासु विद्यार्थी, प्रेरित शिक्षक और सार्थक शिक्षण संसाधन एक साथ आते हैं, तब शिक्षा केवल उपलब्धि का माध्यम नहीं रहती, बल्कि व्यक्तित्व निर्माण की एक सशक्त प्रक्रिया बन जाती है। यही भावना इस विद्यार्थी सहायक सामग्री के केंद्र में है।

मेरी हार्दिक शुभकामनाएँ हैं कि आप सभी सीखने की इस यात्रा में निरंतर आगे बढ़ें, अपने सपनों को नए आयाम दें और ज्ञान, संवेदनशीलता तथा नवाचार के साथ राष्ट्र निर्माण में अपना महत्वपूर्ण योगदान दें।

शुभकामनाओं सहित।


(विकास गुप्ता)

PATRON

Shri VIKAS GUPTA
COMMISSIONER, KVS

CO-PATRON

Ms. CHANDANA MANDAL
ADDITIONAL COMMISSIONER (ACAD.), KVS (HQ)

COORDINATOR

Smt. P B S USHA
JOINT COMMISSIONER (TRAINING), KVS (HQ)

COVER DESIGN

KVS PUBLICATION SECTION

EDITOR

Mr. P I T RAJA
DIRECTOR, ZIET MYSURU

ZIET COORDINATOR

D SREENIVASULU
TA(MATHEMATICS)
KVS ZIET MYSURU

LIST OF CONTRIBUTORS

<u>S.NO</u>	NAME OF THE TEACHER	DESIGNATION	NAME OF THE KV	REGION
1	JASEER K P	PGT(Maths)	KV No.2, MANGALORE	BENGALURU
2	Dr MUGITHI SREEDHAR	PGT(Maths)	PM SHRI KV BALLARI	BENGALURU
3	S S R KRISHNA MADHAVABHOTLA	PGT(Maths)	PM SHRI KV MYSURU	BENGALURU
4	GOLI RAGHUVARA PRASAD RAO	PGT(Maths)	KV CHAMARAJA NAGAR	BENGALURU
5	K SENGUTTUVAN	PGT(Maths)	PM SHRI KV NO.2 AFS TAMBARAM	CHENNAI
6	MR.M VIJAYAN	PGT(Maths)	PM SHRI KV DGQA	CHENNAI
7	NARASIMH PRABHU	PGT(Maths)	PM SHRI KV AFS AVADI	CHENNAI
8	R.RAVI KUMAR	PGT(Maths)	PM SHRI KV NO 1 GOLCONDA	HYDERABAD
9	RAGI UDAY KUMAR	PGT(Maths)	KV WARANGAL	HYDERABAD
10	BIJJA MURALI KRISHNA	PGT(Maths)	PM SHRI KV OF MEDAK	HYDERABAD
11	KAPIL PUNDHIR	PGT(Maths)	PM SHRI KV BAOLI	AGRA
12	SANDEEP CHANDRAVANSHI	PGT(Maths)	PM SHRI KV NO 3 BHOPAL (S-2)	BHOPAL
13	RAM KISHORE BARODE	PGT(Maths)	PM SHRI KV BETUL	BHOPAL
14	Dr. AAYUSHI JAIN	PGT(Maths)	PM SHRI KV NO 1(S-2) INDORE	BHOPAL
15	AMRENDRA KUMAR MISHRA	PGT(Maths)	PM SHRI KV NO.6 BHUBANESWAR	BHUBANESWAR

INDEX

S No	NAME OF CHAPTER	PAGE No.
1	SETS	1 – 10
2	RELATIONS AND FUNCTIONS	11 – 21
3	TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS	22 – 35
4	COMPLEX NUMBERS AND QUADRATIC EQUATIONS	36 – 43
5	LINEAR INEQUALITIES	44 – 53
6	PERMUTATIONS & COMBINATIONS	54 – 67
7	BINOMIAL THEOREM	68 – 75
8	SEQUENCES & SERIES	76 – 89
9	STRAIGHT LINES	90 – 100
10	CONIC SECTIONS	101 – 116
11	INTRODUCTION TO THREE- DIMENSIONAL GEOMETRY	117 – 124
12	LIMITS & DERIVATIVES	125 – 133
13	STATISTICS	134 – 147
14	PROBABILITY	148 – 164
15	EXERCISE QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS (ALL CHAPTERS)	165
16	PRACTICE QUESTION PAPERS	165
17	INTERACTIVE WORKSHEETS	165
17	USEFUL LINKS	166

CHAPTER – 1 SETS

Definitions and Formulae

Set: A Set is a well-defined collection of objects.

Empty Set: A set which does not contain any element is called the empty set or the null set or the void set. The empty set is denoted by the symbol ϕ or $\{ \}$.

Finite and Infinite Sets: A set which is empty or consists of a definite number of elements is called finite otherwise, the set is called infinite.

Equal Sets: Two sets A and B are said to be equal if they have exactly the same elements and we write $A = B$. Otherwise, the sets are said to be unequal and we write $A \neq B$.

Subsets: A set A is said to be a subset of a set B if every element of A is also an element of B.

In other words, $A \subset B$ if whenever $a \in A$, then $a \in B$. Thus $A \subset B$ if $a \in A \Rightarrow a \in B$

If A is not a subset of B, we write $A \not\subset B$.

❖ Every set A is a subset of itself, i.e., $A \subseteq A$.

❖ ϕ is a subset of every set.

❖ If $A \subset B$ and $A \neq B$, then A is called a proper subset of B and B is called superset of A.

❖ If a set A has only one element, we call it a singleton set. Thus $\{a\}$ is a singleton set.

Closed Interval : $[a, b] = \{x \in R : a \leq x \leq b\}$

Open Interval : $(a, b) = \{x \in R : a < x < b\}$

Closed open Interval : $[a, b) = \{x \in R : a \leq x < b\}$

Open closed Interval : $(a, b] = \{x \in R : a < x \leq b\}$

If A is a set with $n(A) = m$, then no. of subsets of set $A = 2^m$.

Universal Set: The largest set under consideration is called Universal set.

UNION OF SETS: The union of two sets A and B is the set C which consists of all those elements which are either in A or in B (including those which are in both).

INTERSECTION OF SETS:

The intersection of two sets A and B is the set of all those elements which belong to both A and B.

Disjoint sets: If A and B are two sets such that $A \cap B = \phi$, then A and B are called disjoint sets.

DIFFERENCE OF SETS:

The difference of the sets A and B in this order is the set of elements which belong to A but not to B.

COMPLEMENT OF A SET:

Let U be the universal set and A be a subset of U. Then the complement of A is the set of all elements of U which are not the elements of A.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS WITH SOLUTIONS

1. Which one of the following sets is infinite?

(A) The set of whole numbers less than 10

(B) The set of prime numbers less than 10

(C) The set of integers less than 10

(D) The set of factors of 10

Answer: (C) The set of integers less than 10

Explanation: The set of whole numbers less than 10 = $\{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9\}$ is finite

The set of prime numbers less than 10 = $\{2, 3, 5, 7\}$ is finite

The set of integers less than 10 = $\{\dots, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9\}$ is infinite since the negative

integers go on for ever.

The set of factors of $10 = \{1, 2, 5, 10\}$ is finite

2. Which one of the following is the null set?

(A) The set of subsets of null set

(B) The set of even prime numbers

(C) The set of factors of 7

(D) The set of rational expressions for π

Answer: (D) The set of rational expressions for π

Explanation: The null set is a subset of itself, so the set of subsets of the null set has one element which is the null set itself.

The set of even prime numbers = $\{2\}$ is not the null set.

The set of factors of $7 = \{1, 7\}$ is not the null set. π is an irrational number, so cannot be expressed as a rational number. Although we often approximate to $\frac{22}{7}$, this is not an exact value. So the set of rational expressions for π is the null set.

3. The set builder form of the set $\{1, 4, 9, 16, 25, \dots\}$ is

(A) $X = \{x: x \text{ is a set of prime numbers}\}$

(B) $X = \{x: x \text{ is a set of whole numbers}\}$

(C) $X = \{x: x \text{ is a set of natural numbers}\}$

(D) $X = \{x: x \text{ is a set of square numbers}\}$

Answer: (D) $X = \{x: x \text{ is a set of square numbers}\}$

Explanation: Given $X = \{1, 4, 9, 16, 25, \dots\} = \{1^2, 2^2, 3^2, 4^2, 5^2, \dots\}$

Therefore, $X = \{x: x \text{ is a set of square numbers}\}$

4. If the set $S = \{x \in \mathbb{Z} \mid x \geq -2\} \cup \{x \in \mathbb{Z} \mid x \leq 4\}$, then $S = ?$

(A) $S = \{x \in \mathbb{Z}: -2 \leq x \leq 4\}$

(B) $S = \{x \in \mathbb{Z}: -2 < x < 4\}$

(C) $S = \{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}$

(D) $\mathbb{Z}$

Answer: (D) $\mathbb{Z}$

Explanation: $\cup$ means 'union', so let us see what happens when we join the sets:

$\{x \in \mathbb{Z} \mid x \geq -2\} = \{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$ $\{x \in \mathbb{Z} \mid x \leq 4\} = \{\dots, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}$

So together they are $\{\dots, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, \dots\} = \mathbb{Z}$, the set of Integers.

So $\{x \in \mathbb{Z} \mid x \geq -2\} \cup \{x \in \mathbb{Z} \mid x \leq 4\} = \{\dots, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, \dots\} = \mathbb{Z}$

5. The set builder notation of set $S = \{\dots, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$ is

(A) $S = \{x \in \mathbb{Z}: -5 \leq x \leq 5\}$

(B) $S = \{x \in \mathbb{Z}: x \leq 5\}$

(C) $S = \{x \in \mathbb{Z}: x < 5\}$

(D) $S = \{x \in \mathbb{R}: x \leq 5\}$

Answer: (B) $S = \{x \in \mathbb{Z}: x \leq 5\}$

Explanation: The numbers listed in S are all integers, so $x \in \mathbb{Z}$ is correct.

The integers listed finish at 5, but the " $\dots$ " shows that the list continues indefinitely to $-\infty$

Therefore $x \leq 5$. Putting $x \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $x \leq 5$ together gives us answer B in set builder notation.

6. A, B and C are three sets such that A is a subset of B and B is a subset of C. Which one of the following statements must always be true?

(A) B is a subset of A

(B) C is a subset of B

(C) C is a subset of A

(D) A is a subset of C

Answer: (D) A is a subset of C

Explanation: A is a subset of B means every element of A is in B and B is a subset of C means every element of B is in C. Therefore, if both statements are true, it follows that every element of A is in C $\Rightarrow$ A is a subset of C is always true

7. Let A and B be two sets in the same universal set. Then A-B equals to

- (A) $A \cap B$ (B) $A' \cap B$ (C) $A \cap B'$ (D) $A' \cap B'$

Answer: (C) $A \cap B'$

Explanation: The venn diagram represents A-B which is equal to $A \cap B'$

8. Which of the following real values lie outside the interval (1, 8)?

- (A) 1.5 (B) 7 (C) 4 (D) 1 and 8

Answer: (D) 1 and 8

Explanation: 1 and 8 lies outside the set as $(a, b) = \{x : a < x < b\}$

9. How do we write the set $\{x: x \in \mathbf{R}, -8 \leq x < -5\}$ in interval notation?

- (A) $(-8, -5)$ (B) $(-8, -5]$ (C) $[-8, -5)$ (D) $[-8, -5]$

Answer: (C) $[-8, -5)$

Explanation: $(a, b) = \{x : a < x < b\}$ and $[a, b] = \{x : a \leq x \leq b\}$. So the interval is closed at -8 as -8 is included but it is open at -5 as it is not included in the set.

10. Which of the following statement regarding the set $A = \{\{-2, 2\}, \{-1, 1\}, 0\}$ is true?

- (A) $\{\{0\}\} \subset A$ (B) $\{\{-1, 1\}\} \subset A$ (C) $\{-2, 2\} \subset A$ (D) $\{-1, 0, 1\} \subset A$

Answer: (B) $\{\{-1, 1\}\} \subset A$

Explanation: $\{\{0\}\} \subset A$ is false as $\{0\} \subset A$, $\{-2, 2\}$

$\subset A$ is false as it is a member of set so it belongs to A

$\{-1, 0, 1\} \subset A$ is false as $\{-1, 1\} \in A$ but -1 and 1 doesn't belongs to A

ASSERTION - REASON BASED QUESTIONS

In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R).

Pick the correct option:

A) Both Assertion (A) and Reason(R) are true and Reason(R) is the correct explanation of Assertion (A).

B) Both Assertion (A) and Reason(R) are true but Reason(R) is not the correct explanation of Assertion (A).

C) Assertion (A) is true but Reason(R) is false.

D) Assertion (A) is false but Reason(R) is true.

1. **Assertion:** The set $A = \{2, 4, 6, 8, 10\}$ can be written in set-builder form as

$A = \{x : x \text{ is an even natural number less than or equal to } 10\}$

Reason: The set-builder form lists all elements while roster form describes the property of elements.

Answer: C)-Assertion (A) is true but Reason(R) is false

Solution: The roster form lists all elements while set-builder form describes the property of elements.

2. **Assertion:** The set $\{x \in \mathbf{R} : 3 < x \leq 7\}$ is represented in interval notation as (3,7).

Reason: Open interval indicates exclusion and closed interval indicates inclusion of an endpoint in an interval.

Answer: D)-Assertion (A) is false but Reason(R) is true.

Solution: The set $\{x \in \mathbf{R} : 3 < x \leq 7\}$ is represented in interval notation as (3, 7].

3. **Assertion:** The empty set is a subset of every set.

Reason: A set with no element is called a null set.

Answer: A)-Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation for A.

Solution: The empty set is defined as a set with no elements, which is also known as a null set. Since the empty set has no elements, it is trivially a subset of any other set because every element of the empty set is an element of the other set.

4. **Assertion:** If $A \subseteq B$ and $B \subseteq A$, then $A = B$.

Reason: Two sets are equal if and only if each element of one set is also an element of the other set.

Answer: A)-Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation for A.

Solution: The assertion is true because if every element of A is in B ($A \subseteq B$) and every element of B is in A ($B \subseteq A$), then the two sets must contain the same elements, meaning they are equal.

5. **Assertion:** If W is the set of whole numbers and N is the set of Natural numbers then W-N is an empty set

Reason: A-B is the set of elements of A which are not in B.

Answer: D)-Assertion (A) is false but Reason(R) is true

Solution: W-N equals to $\{0\}$. So it is not an empty set

6. **Assertion:** The intersection of two finite sets is always finite .

Reason: The intersection of two finite sets contains only the common elements , which is also a finite collection .

Answer: A)-Both Assertion (A) and Reason(R) are true and Reason(R) is the correct explanation of Assertion (A).

Solution: The assertion is correct (the intersection is the set of elements common in both set), and the reason is also correct.

7. **Assertion:** If $A \subseteq B$, then the Venn diagram will show that the circle representing A is completely inside the circle representing B.

Reason: A set is always a subset of itself.

Answer: B)-Both Assertion (A) and Reason(R) are true but Reason(R) is not the correct explanation of Assertion (A).

Solution: A set is a subset of itself doesn't explain why A is inside B in the Venn diagram.

8. **Assertion:** If $A \cap B = A$, then $A \subseteq B$.

Reason: The intersection of two sets is always equal to the smaller set.

Answer: C) Assertion (A) is true but Reason(R) is false.

Solution: If the intersection of A and B gives back A which means every element of A is also in B. So, A is a subset of B. Reason is not true as the intersection of two sets is the set of elements common to both.

9. **Assertion:** If $A \cup B = B$, then $A \subseteq B$.

Reason: The union of two sets contains all elements that belongs to either set.

Answer: A) Both Assertion (A) and Reason(R) are true but Reason(R) is the correct explanation of Assertion (A).

Solution: If $A \cup B = B$, this means adding all elements of A to B does not change B. So all elements of A must already be in B. So, A is a subset of B. Reason is true as that's the definition of union of sets. (R) is the correct explanation of A since the reason explains why $A \cup B = B$.

10. **Assertion:** If A is the set of letters of the word 'FOLLOW' and B is the set of letters of the word 'WOLF', then A and B are equal sets.

Reason: Two sets are equal if they have same number of elements.

Answer: C) Assertion (A) is true but Reason(R) is false

Solution: Two sets are equal if they have same elements. Sets having same number of elements are known as equivalent sets.

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS WITH SOLUTIONS

1. Write the solution set of the equation $x^2 + 5x + 6 = 0$ in roster form.

Solution: $x^2 + 5x + 6 = 0 \Rightarrow (x + 2)(x + 3) = 0 \Rightarrow x = -2$ or $x = -3$

Therefore, the solution set of the given equation can be written in roster form as $\{-3, -2\}$.

2. List all the subsets of the set $\{-1, 0, 1\}$.

Solution: Let $A = \{-1, 0, 1\}$. The subset of A having no element is the empty set ϕ . The subsets of A having one element are $\{-1\}$, $\{0\}$, $\{1\}$. The subsets of A having two elements are $\{-1, 0\}$, $\{-1, 1\}$, $\{0, 1\}$. The subset of A having three elements of A is A itself.

So, all the subsets of A are ϕ , $\{-1\}$, $\{0\}$, $\{1\}$, $\{-1, 0\}$, $\{-1, 1\}$, $\{0, 1\}$ and $\{-1, 0, 1\}$.

3. Show that the set of letters needed to spell "CATARACT" and the set of letters needed to spell "TRACT" are equal.

Solution: Let X be the set of letters in "CATARACT". Then $X = \{C, A, T, R\}$

Let Y be the set of letters in "TRACT". Then $Y = \{T, R, A, C\}$

Since every element in X is in Y and every element in Y is in X. It follows that $X = Y$.

4. Let $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$, $B = \{2, 4, 6, 8\}$. Find $A - B$ and $B - A$.

Solution: $A - B = \{1, 3, 5\}$, since the elements 1, 3, 5 belong to A but not to B

$B - A = \{8\}$, since the element 8 belongs to B and not to A.

5. From the above Venn diagram, what is the set $(S \cap T) \cup V$?

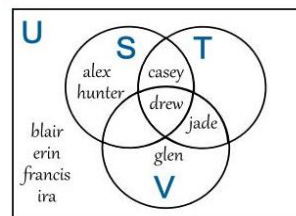
Solution: $\cup$ means "Union" (in either set)

$\cap$ means "Intersection" (must be in both sets)

$S \cap T = \{\text{casey, drew}\}$

$V = \{\text{drew, jade, glen}\}$

$(S \cap T) \cup V = \{\text{casey, drew}\} \cup \{\text{drew, jade, glen}\}$
 $= \{\text{casey, drew, jade, glen}\}$



6. Find the complement of A if the Universal Set

$U = \{x \in \mathbb{Z} \mid -4 \leq x < 4\}$ and $A = \{0\}$.

Solution: $U = \{x \in \mathbb{Z} \mid -4 \leq x < 4\} = \{-4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3\}$ $A = \{0\}$

Thus $A' = U - A = \{-4, -3, -2, -1, 1, 2, 3\}$.

7. Let A, B and C be three sets. If $A \in B$ and $B \subset C$, is it true that $A \subset C$? If not, give an example.

Solution: No. Let $A = \{1\}$, $B = \{\{1\}, 2\}$ and $C = \{\{1\}, 2, 3\}$.

Here $A \in B$ as $A = \{1\}$ and $B \subset C$.

But $A \not\subset C$ as $1 \in A$ and $1 \notin C$.

8. Find the set $(A \cup B)'$ if $U = \{x: x \in \mathbb{N}, x \leq 9\}$; $A = \{x: x \text{ is an even number}, 0 < x < 10\}$ and $B = \{2, 3, 5, 7\}$.

Solution: $U = \{x: x \in \mathbb{N}, x \leq 9\} \Rightarrow U = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9\}$

$A = \{x: x \text{ is an even number}, 0 < x < 10\} \Rightarrow A = \{2, 4, 6, 8\}$

$B = \{2, 3, 5, 7\} \Rightarrow A \cup B = \{2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8\} \Rightarrow (A \cup B)' = U - (A \cup B) = \{1, 9\}$

9. Let $X = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$. If n represent any member of X , express the values of n as sets.

(i) $n + 5 = 8$

(ii) n is greater than 4

Solution: (i) Let $B = \{x \mid x \in X \text{ and } x + 5 = 8\}$

Here, $B = \{3\}$ as $x = 3 \in X$ and $3 + 5 = 8$ and there is no other element belonging to X such that $x + 5 = 8$.

(i) Let $C = \{x \mid x \in X, x > 4\} \Rightarrow C = \{5, 6\}$

10. Express set $A = \{x \mid x \text{ is a positive integer less than 10 and } 2^x - 1 \text{ is an odd number}\}$ in roster form.

Solution: $2^x - 1$ is always an odd number for all positive integral values of x since 2^x is an even number. In particular, $2^x - 1$ is an odd number for $x = 1, 2, \dots, 9$.

$$\Rightarrow A = \{1, 3, 5, 7, 9\}$$

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTION WITH SOLUTIONS

1. Use the properties of sets to prove that for all the sets A and B , $A - (A \cap B) = A - B$

Solution: $A - (A \cap B) = A \cap (A \cap B)'$ (since $A - B = A \cap B'$)
 $= A \cap (A' \cup B')$ [by De Morgan's law]
 $= (A \cap A') \cup (A \cap B')$ [by distributive law]
 $= \phi \cup (A \cap B')$
 $= A \cap B' = A - B$

2. Let $U = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$, $A = \{2, 3\}$ and $B = \{3, 4, 5\}$. Find A' , B' , $A' \cap B'$, $A \cup B$ and hence show that $(A \cup B)' = A' \cap B'$.

Solution: Given, $U = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$, $A = \{2, 3\}$ and $B = \{3, 4, 5\}$

$$\Rightarrow A' = \{1, 4, 5, 6\}$$

$$\Rightarrow B' = \{1, 2, 6\}.$$

$$\text{Hence, } A' \cap B' = \{1, 6\}$$

$$A \cup B = \{2, 3, 4, 5\} \Rightarrow (A \cup B)' = \{1, 6\}$$

$$\text{Therefore, } (A \cup B)' = \{1, 6\} = A' \cap B'$$

3. In a survey of 600 students in a school, 150 students were found to be drinking Tea and 225 drinking Coffee, 100 were drinking both Tea and Coffee. Find how many students were drinking neither Tea nor Coffee. (Not for Summative Assessment)

Solution: Total number of students = 600

$$\text{Number of students who were drinking Tea} = n(T) = 150$$

$$\text{Number of students who were drinking Coffee} = n(C) = 225$$

$$\text{Number of students who were drinking both Tea and Coffee} = n(T \cap C) = 100$$

$$n(T \cup C) = n(T) + n(C) - n(T \cap C)$$

$$= 150 + 225 - 100$$

$$= 375 - 100 = 275$$

Hence, the number of students who are drinking neither Tea nor Coffee = $600 - 275 = 325$

4. Using properties of sets, prove that:

(i) $A \cup (A \cap B) = A$

(ii) $A \cap (A \cup B) = A$

Solution: (i) We know the union is distributive over the intersection.

$$A \cup (A \cap B) = (A \cup A) \cap (A \cup B) \text{ [Since, } A \cup A = A]$$

$$= A \cap (A \cup B) = A$$

(ii) We know the union is distributive over the intersection.

$$A \cap (A \cup B) = (A \cap A) \cup (A \cap B)$$

$$= A \cup (A \cap B) \text{ [Since, } A \cap A = A]$$

$$= A$$

5. Let A, B, C be the sets such that $A \cup B = A \cup C$ and $A \cap B = A \cap C$. Show that $B = C$.

Solution: Let us have $b \in B \Rightarrow b \in A \cup B$

Also it is given $A \cup B = A \cup C$

Therefore $b \in A \cup C$

Hence we get $b \in A$ or $b \in C$

If $b \in A$ then $b \in A \cap B$ which is equals to $A \cap C \Rightarrow b \in C$

In both cases B is subset of C.

Similarly Let us have $c \in C \Rightarrow c \in A \cup C$

Also it is given $A \cup B = A \cup C$

Therefore $b \in A \cup B$

Hence we get $b \in A$ or $b \in B$

If $b \in A$ then $b \in A \cap C$ which is equals to $A \cap B \Rightarrow b \in B$

In both cases C is subset of B.

Therefore $B = C$

6. If $L = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$, $M = \{3, 4, 5, 6\}$ and $N = \{1, 3, 5\}$ then verify that

$$L - (M \cup N) = (L - M) \cap (L - N)$$

Solution: $L = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$, $M = \{3, 4, 5, 6\}$ and $N = \{1, 3, 5\}$

$$\Rightarrow (M \cup N) = \{1, 3, 4, 5, 6\}, (L - M) = \{1, 2\}, (L - N) = \{2, 4\}$$

$$\Rightarrow L - (M \cup N) = \{2\} \text{ and } (L - M) \cap (L - N) = \{2\}$$

$$\Rightarrow L - (M \cup N) = (L - M) \cap (L - N)$$

7. If P is the set of whole numbers less than 5, Q is the set of even numbers greater than 3 but less than 9 and R is the set of factors of 6. Then what is $(P \cap Q) \cup (Q \cap R)$?

Solution: $P = \{0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}$ $Q = \{4, 6, 8\}$ $R = \{1, 2, 3, 6\}$

$$P \cap Q = \{4\} \quad Q \cap R = \{6\}$$

$$\text{So } (P \cap Q) \cup (Q \cap R) = \{4\} \cup \{6\} = \{4, 6\}$$

8. Let $A = \{a, b, c\}$ and $B = \{1, 2\}$. Find $A \cup B$ and $B \cup A$. If $C = \{4, 6\}$ then prove that

$$A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$$

Solution: $A \cup B = \{a, b, c, 1, 2\}$ $B \cup A = \{1, 2, a, b, c\}$.

$$A \cup (B \cap C) = \{a, b, c\} \quad A \cup B = \{a, b, c, 1, 2\} \quad A \cup C = \{a, b, c, 4, 6\}$$

$$\text{Now } (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C) = \{a, b, c\}$$

$$\text{Thus } A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$$

9. Let A, B, and C be sets such that $A \subseteq B$ and $B \subseteq C$. Prove that $A \cup B = B$ and $A \cup C = C$

Solution: Let $x \in A \cup B$

Then $x \in A$ or $x \in B$.

If $x \in A$ and since $A \subseteq B$, then $x \in B$

If $x \in B$, then obviously $x \in B$
 So in both cases, $x \in B \Rightarrow A \cup B \subseteq B$
 Also we have $B \subseteq A \cup B \Rightarrow A \cup B = B$
 Let $x \in A \cup C$
 Then $x \in A$ or $x \in C$.
 If $x \in A$ and since $A \subseteq C$, then $x \in C$
 If $x \in C$, then obviously $x \in C$
 So in both cases, $x \in C \Rightarrow A \cup C \subseteq C$
 Also we have $C \subseteq A \cup C \Rightarrow A \cup C = C$

10. Using properties of sets, prove that $(A \cup B) - B = A - B$

Solution: $(A \cup B) - B = (A \cup B) \cap B'$ $[(X - Y) = X \cap Y']$
 $= (A \cap B') \cup (B \cap B')$
 $= (A \cap B') \cup \emptyset$
 $= A - B$

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS WITH SOLUTIONS

1. For all sets A, B and C, show that $(A - B) \cap (C - B) = A - (B \cup C)$

Solution: Let $x \in (A - B) \cap (A - C) \Rightarrow x \in (A - B)$ and $x \in (A - C)$
 $\Rightarrow (x \in A \text{ and } x \notin B) \text{ and } (x \in A \text{ and } x \notin C)$
 $\Rightarrow x \in A \text{ and } (x \notin B \text{ and } x \notin C)$
 $\Rightarrow x \in A \text{ and } x \notin (B \cup C)$
 $\Rightarrow x \in A - (B \cup C)$
 $\Rightarrow (A - B) \cap (C - B) \subset A - (B \cup C) \dots \dots \dots (i)$

Now let $y \in A - (B \cup C) \Rightarrow y \in A \text{ and } y \notin (B \cup C)$
 $\Rightarrow y \in A \text{ and } (y \notin B \text{ and } y \notin C)$
 $\Rightarrow (y \in A \text{ and } y \notin B) \text{ and } (y \in A \text{ and } y \notin C)$
 $\Rightarrow y \in (A - B) \text{ and } y \in (A - C)$
 $\Rightarrow y \in (A - B) \cap (A - C)$
 $\Rightarrow A - (B \cup C) \subset (A - B) \cap (C - B) \dots \dots \dots (ii)$

From (i) and (ii) we get $(A - B) \cap (C - B) = A - (B \cup C)$

2. Two finite sets have m and n elements. The total number of subsets of first set is 56 more than the total number of subsets of the second set. Find the value of m and n.

Solution: No. of elements in A = m

No. of elements in B = n

According the question, No. of subsets of set A - No. of subsets off set B = 112

$$2^m - 2^n = 112 \Rightarrow 2^n(2^{m-n} - 1) = 112 \text{ because } m > n$$

$$2^n(2^{m-n} - 1) = 16 \times 7 \Rightarrow 2^n(2^{m-n} - 1) = 2^4 \times 7$$

By comparing to both sides we get $2^n = 2^4$ and $2^{m-n} - 1 = 7 \Rightarrow n = 4$ and $2^{m-n} = 8$

$$2^{m-n} = 8 \Rightarrow m - n = 3 \Rightarrow m = n + 3 \Rightarrow m = 4 + 3 = 7$$

3. Let A and B be two sets such that: $n(A) = 20$, $n(A \cup B) = 42$ and $n(A \cap B) = 4$. Find

(i) $n(B)$

(ii) $n(A - B)$

(iii) $n(B - A)$

Solution: (i) $n(A \cup B) = n(A) + n(B) - n(A \cap B)$

$$42 = 20 + n(B) - 4$$

$$\therefore n(B) = 26$$

$$(ii) n(A - B) = n(A \cup B) - n(B) = 42 - 26 = 16$$

$$\therefore n(A - B) = 16$$

$$(iii) n(B - A) = n(B) - n(A \cap B)$$

$$n(B - A) = 26 - 4 = 22$$

$$\therefore n(B - A) = 22$$

4. Let X = the set of all letters in the word 'NEW DELHI' and Y = the set of all letters in the word 'CHANDIGARH'. Find (i) $X \cup Y$ (ii) $X \cap Y$ (iii) $X - Y$.

Also verify that (a) $n(X \cup Y) = n(X) + n(Y) - n(X \cap Y)$

$$(b) n(X - Y) = n(X \cup Y) - n(Y)$$

Solution: $X = \{N, E, W, D, L, H, I\}$ $Y = \{C, H, A, N, D, I, G, R\}$

$$X \cup Y = \{N, E, W, D, L, H, I, C, A, G, R\}$$

$$X \cap Y = \{N, D, H, I\} \quad X - Y = \{E, W, L\}$$

$$n(X \cup Y) = 11 \quad n(X) = 7 \quad n(Y) = 8 \quad n(X \cap Y) = 4 \quad n(X - Y) = 3$$

$$n(X) + n(Y) - n(X \cap Y) = 7 + 8 - 4 = 11 \Rightarrow n(X \cup Y) = n(X) + n(Y) - n(X \cap Y)$$

$$n(X \cup Y) - n(Y) = 11 - 8 = 3 \Rightarrow n(X - Y) = n(X \cup Y) - n(Y)$$

5. Let A , B and C be sets. Then show that $A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$

Solution: To show that $A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$, we must prove that each side is a subset of the other.

$$\text{Let } x \in A \cap (B \cup C) \Rightarrow x \in A \text{ and } x \in B \cup C$$

$$x \in B \cup C \Rightarrow x \in B \text{ or } x \in C$$

$$\text{If } x \in B \text{ and since } x \in A \Rightarrow x \in A \cap B$$

$$\text{If } x \in C \text{ and since } x \in A \Rightarrow x \in A \cap C$$

$$\text{In either case } x \in (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$$

$$\text{Thus } A \cap (B \cup C) \subseteq (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C) \text{ ---- (1)}$$

$$\text{Let } y \in (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C) \Rightarrow y \in (A \cap B) \text{ or } y \in (A \cap C)$$

$$y \in (A \cap B) \Rightarrow y \in A \text{ and } y \in B$$

$$y \in (A \cap C) \Rightarrow y \in A \text{ and } y \in C$$

$$\text{In both cases } y \in A, \text{ also either } y \in B \text{ or } y \in C \Rightarrow y \in B \cup C$$

$$\Rightarrow y \in A \cap (B \cup C)$$

$$\text{Thus } (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C) \subseteq A \cap (B \cup C) \text{ ---- (2)}$$

From (1) and (2) $A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$.

CASE STUDY BASED QUESTIONS WITH SOLUTIONS

1. A university library categorizes its digital resources into three overlapping domains based on access rights:

Set A: Resources accessible to **Undergraduate** students.

Set B: Resources accessible via **Campus Wi-Fi**.

Set C: Resources containing **Peer-Reviewed** journals.

Questions:

- (i) A student is off-campus and looking for peer-reviewed journals. Write the set expression representing the resources they can access.
- (ii) The library decides to restrict all **Undergraduate** materials such that they must be **both** on Campus Wi-Fi **and** Peer-Reviewed. Express this new restricted set using A, B, and C.
- (iii) Simplify the expression $(A \cap B) \cup (A \cap B')$. What does this result represent in the context of the student groups .

Solutions : (i) $C \cap B'$ as B' represents the off campus students .

(ii) $A \cap (B \cap C)$, as the resource must belong to the Undergraduate set (A) AND must simultaneously satisfy being on Wi-Fi (B) and being Peer-Reviewed (C).

(iii) $(A \cap B) \cup (A \cap B') = A \cap (B \cup B') = A \cap U = A$, this represents all undergraduate resources .

2. A hospital blood bank uses sets to represent antigens. Let the universal set U be the population of donors.

- A: Donors with A – antigen
- B: Donors with B- Antigen
- Rh: Donors with the Rh factor (positive)

Questions:

- (i) Type "O-Negative" blood lacks the A-antigen, the B-antigen, and the Rh-factor. Write the set expression for O-Negative donors using A, B, Rh, and complements.
- (ii) A patient can receive "Type AB-Positive" blood, which contains all three antigens. This is represented by $A \cap B \cap Rh$. If a donor $d \notin (A \cup B)$, can they be an AB-Positive donor? Justify your answer.

Solution:

(i) $A' \cap B' \cap Rh'$, as the donor lacks A , B and Rh

(ii) $d \notin (A \cup B) \Rightarrow d \in (A \cup B)' \Rightarrow d \in A' \cap B'$, This means the donor has neither antigen A nor B, making it impossible for them to have both (AB).

3. A streaming platform like Netflix or Spotify categorizes content into sets to provide recommendations:

Set H: Movies categorized as **Horror**.

Set A: Movies categorized as **Action**.

Set W: Movies that have **Won Awards** (critically acclaimed).

Questions :

(i) A user wants to watch “a scary movie” that is not physically intense (no action) . Write the set expression for this .

(ii) An” action horror “ movie that has won an award , write the set expression for this .

Solution: (i) $H \cap A'$

(ii) $(H \cap A) \cap W$

CHAPTER-2: RELATIONS & FUNCTIONS

Definition and Formulae:

Ordered Pair:

If a pair of objects/elements/things are arranged in a particular order is called an ordered pair. Here, pair of elements written in circular bracket and separated by comma (,).

E.g. The ordered pair of two elements a and b is denoted by (a,b) : a is first element (or first component) and b is second element (or second component).

Note: 1. Two ordered pairs are equal iff their corresponding elements are equal.

i.e. $(a,b)=(c,d) \leftrightarrow a=c$ and $b=d$.

2. Graphically, ordered pair (a, b) represents a point in cartesian plane. So, ordered pair $(2,3)$ implies that abscissa $x=2$ and ordinate $y=3$.

Cartesian product of sets: Let A and B be any two non-empty sets. The set of all ordered pairs (a, b) such that $a \in A$ and $b \in B$ is called the cartesian product of the sets A and B and is denoted by $A \times B$.

Thus, $A \times B = \{(a, b) : a \in A \text{ and } b \in B\}$.

Note: If $A = \phi$ or $B = \phi$, then we define $A \times B = \phi$.

Example: Let $A = \{a, b, c\}$ and $B = \{p, q\}$. Then $A \times B = \{(a, p), (a, q), (b, p), (b, q), (c, p), (c, q)\}$

Also, $B \times A = \{(p, a), (p, b), (p, c), (q, a), (q, b), (q, c)\}$. In general, $A \times B \neq B \times A$.

Note: $n(A \times B) = n(B \times A) = n(A)n(B)$

Important theorems on cartesian product of sets:

Theorem 1 : For any three sets A, B, C

(i) $A \times (B \cup C) = (A \times B) \cup (A \times C)$ (ii) $A \times (B \cap C) = (A \times B) \cap (A \times C)$

Theorem 2 : For any three sets A, B, C , we have $A \times (B - C) = (A \times B) - (A \times C)$

Theorem 3 : If A and B are any two non-empty sets, then $A \times B = B \times A \Leftrightarrow A = B$

Theorem 4 : If $A \subseteq B$, then $A \times A \subseteq (A \times B) \cap (B \times A)$

Theorem 5 : If $A \subseteq B$, then $A \times C \subseteq B \times C$ for any set C .

Theorem 6 : If $A \subseteq B$ and $C \subseteq D$, then $A \times C \subseteq B \times D$

Theorem 7 : For any sets A, B, C, D we have $(A \times B) \cap (C \times D) = (A \cap C) \times (B \cap D)$

Theorem 8 : For any three sets A, B, C

(i) $A \times (B' \cup C') = (A \times B) \cap (A \times C)$ (ii) $A \times (B' \cap C') = (A \times B) \cup (A \times C)$

Note: If A is non-empty set then $A \times A \times A = \{(a, b, c) : a, b, c \in A\}$. Here (a, b, c) is called an ordered triplet. In general, if $A_1, A_2, \dots, A_n$ are n sets, then $(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$ is called a n -tuple, where $a_i, i=1, 2, \dots, n$ and the set of all such n -tuples is called the cartesian product of $A_1, A_2, \dots, A_n$ and is denoted by $A_1 \times A_2 \times \dots \times A_n$. In symbolic form, $A_1 \times A_2 \times \dots \times A_n = \{(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) : a_i \in A_i, 1 \leq i \leq n\}$

RELATION:

Let A and B be two non-empty sets, then every subset of $A \times B$ defines a relation from A to B and every relation from A to B is a subset of $A \times B$. Let $R \subseteq A \times B$ and $(a, b) \in R$. Then we say that a is related to b by the relation R and write it as aRb . If $(a, b) \in R$, we write it as aRb .

❖ A relation R from a non-empty set A to a non-empty set B is a subset of the cartesian product $A \times B$. The subset is derived by describing a relationship between the first element and the second element of the ordered pairs in $A \times B$.

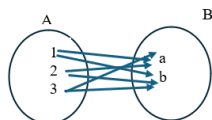
❖ The second element is called the image of the first element.

- ❖ The set of all first elements of the ordered pairs in a relation R from a set A to a set B is called the domain of the relation R .
- ❖ The set of all second elements in a relation R from a set A to a set B is called the range of the relation R . The whole set B is called the co-domain of the relation R . So, $\text{RANGE} \subseteq \text{CODOMAIN}$.
- ❖ **Total number of relations:** Let A and B be two non-empty finite sets consisting of m and n elements respectively. Then $A \times B$ consists of mn ordered pairs. So, total number of subsets of $A \times B$ is 2^{mn} . Since each subset of $A \times B$ defines relation from A to B , so total number of relations from A to B is 2^{mn} . Among these 2^{mn} relations the void relation ϕ and the universal relation $A \times B$ are trivial relations from A to B .
- ❖ **Domain and range of a relation:** Let R be a relation from a set A to a set B . Then the set of all first components or coordinates of the ordered pairs belonging to R is called the domain of R , while the set of all second components or coordinates of the ordered pairs in R is called the range of R .
Thus, $\text{Dom}(R) = \{a: (a, b) \in R\}$ and $\text{Range}(R) = \{b: (a, b) \in R\}$.
- ❖ If $R = \emptyset$ then R is called an empty relation and If $R = A \times B$ then R is called the universal relation
- ❖ If R_1 and R_2 are relations from A to B then $R_1 \cup R_2$, $R_1 \cap R_2$ and $R_1 - R_2$ are also relations from A to B .

Representation of a Relation:

A relation can be represented algebraically by roster form or by set-builder form and visually, it can be represented by an arrow diagram.

- (i) Roster form: In this form, we represent the relation by the set of all ordered pairs belongs to R .
- (ii) Set-builder form: In this form, we represent the relation R from set A to set B as $R = \{(a, b) : a \in A, b \in B \text{ and the rule which relate the elements of } A \text{ and } B\}$
- (iii) Arrow diagram: In order to represent $A \times B$ by an arrow diagram, we first draw two circles representing sets A and B one opposite to the other as shown in the figure and write the elements of sets in the corresponding circles. Now, we draw line segments starting from each element of set A and terminating to each element of set B . For eg. If $A = \{1, 2, 3\}$ and $B = \{a, b\}$, then following figure gives the arrow diagram of $A \times B$.



FUNCTION:

A relation f from a non-empty set A to non-empty set B is said to be function, if every element of set A has one and only one image in set B .

Note: 1. If f is a function from a set A to a set B , then we write $f: A \rightarrow B$ and it is read as f is function/mapping/correspondence from A to B or f map A to B and $(a, b) \in f$, then $f(a) = b$, where b is called image of a under f and a is called the pre-image of b under f . In other words, a function f is a relation from a non-empty set A to a non-empty set B such that the domain of f is A and no two distinct ordered pairs in ' f ' have the same first element.

- 2. Every function is a relation but converse is need not be true.
- 3. Generally, X-axis is the domain, Y-axis is the Co-domain and Graph of the function represents a function.
- 4. A function which has either R or one of its subsets as its range is called a real valued function. Further, if its domain is also either R or a subset of R , it is called a real function.
- 5. If we draw a vertical line i.e, any line parallel to Y-axis. If this line intersects the graph of the curve in not more than one point or cuts the graph at most one point, then the curve is a function.

Domain, Codomain and Range of a Function

If $f: A \rightarrow B$, then the set A is called the domain of function f and the set B is called the codomain of f .

The subset of B containing the images of elements of A is called the range of the function.

Number of functions: Let X and Y be two finite sets having m and n elements respectively. Then each element of set X can be associated to any one of n elements of set Y . So, total number of functions from set X to set Y is n^m .

SOME STANDARD FUNCTIONS

IDENTITY FUNCTION:

Let $\mathbf{R}$ be the set of real numbers. Define the real valued function $f: \mathbf{R} \rightarrow \mathbf{R}$ by $y = f(x) = x$ for each $x \in \mathbf{R}$.

Such a function is called the identity function. Here the domain and range of f are $\mathbf{R}$.

CONSTANT FUNCTION:

Define the function $f: \mathbf{R} \rightarrow \mathbf{R}$ by $y = f(x) = c$, $x \in \mathbf{R}$ where c is a constant and each $x \in \mathbf{R}$. Here domain of f is $\mathbf{R}$ and its range is $\{c\}$.

POLYNOMIAL FUNCTION:

A function $f: \mathbf{R} \rightarrow \mathbf{R}$ is said to be polynomial function if for each x in $\mathbf{R}$, where $y = f(x) = a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots + a_nx^n$, where n is a non-negative integer and $a_0, a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \in \mathbf{R}$ and domain is $\mathbf{R}$.

RATIONAL FUNCTIONS: They are functions of the type $\frac{f(x)}{g(x)}$, where $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ are polynomial

functions of x defined in a domain, where $g(x) \neq 0$.

MODULUS FUNCTION: The function $f: \mathbf{R} \rightarrow \mathbf{R}$ defined by $f(x) = |x|$ for each $x \in \mathbf{R}$ is called modulus function. For each non-negative value of x , $f(x)$ is equal to x . But for negative values of x , the value of $f(x)$ is

the negative of the value of x , i.e., $f(x) = \begin{cases} x, & x \geq 0 \\ -x, & x < 0 \end{cases}$. Domain is $\mathbf{R}$ and Range is $[0, \infty)$.

SIGNUM FUNCTION: The function $f: \mathbf{R} \rightarrow \mathbf{R}$ defined by $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } x > 0 \\ 0, & \text{if } x = 0 \\ -1, & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}$ is called the signum

function. The domain of the signum function is $\mathbf{R}$ and the range is the set $\{-1, 0, 1\}$.

GREATEST INTEGER FUNCTION:

The function $f: \mathbf{R} \rightarrow \mathbf{R}$ defined by $f(x) = [x]$, $x \in \mathbf{R}$ assumes the value of the greatest integer, less than or equal to x . Such a function is called the greatest integer function. Domain is $\mathbf{R}$ and Range is $\mathbf{Z}$.

$[x] = -1$ for $-1 \leq x < 0$, $[x] = 0$ for $0 \leq x < 1$, $[x] = 1$ for $1 \leq x < 2$, $[x] = 2$ for $2 \leq x < 3$ and so on.

Exponential function: Let $a \neq 1$ be a positive real number. Then $f: \mathbf{R} \rightarrow (0, \infty)$ defined by $f(x) = a^x$ called exponential function. Its domain is $\mathbf{R}$ and range is $(0, \infty)$.

Logarithmic function: Let $a \neq 1$ be a positive real number. Then $f: (0, \infty) \rightarrow \mathbf{R}$ defined by $f(x) = \log_a x$ is called logarithmic function. Its domain is $(0, \infty)$ and range is $\mathbf{R}$.

Explicit and implicit functions: A function is said to be explicit if it can be expressed directly in terms of the independent variable. If the function cannot be expressed directly in terms of the independent variable or variables, then the function is said to be implicit. e.g. $y = \sin^{-1} x + \log x$ is explicit function, while $x^2 + y^2 = xy$ and $x^3y^2 = (a-x)^2(b-y)^2$ are implicit functions.

Equal Functions:

Two functions f and g are said to be equal iff (i) domain of f = domain of g (ii) codomain of f = codomain of g (iii) $f(x) = g(x)$ for every x belonging to their common domain and then we write $f = g$.

Algebra of Real Functions:

Let $f: D_1 \rightarrow R$ and $g: D_2 \rightarrow R$ be two real functions with domain D_1 and D_2 respectively, then

(i) $(f + g)(x) = f(x) + g(x)$ (ii) $(f - g)(x) = f(x) - g(x)$ (iii) $(f \cdot g)(x) = f(x) \cdot g(x)$, for all $x \in D_1 \cap D_2$

(iv) $(cf)(x) = c \cdot f(x)$, for all $x \in D_1$, where c is a real number (v) $\frac{f}{g}(x) = \frac{f(x)}{g(x)}$, $x \in D_1 \cap D_2$ and $g(x) \neq 0$

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS WITH SOLUTIONS

1. If $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2, & x < 0 \\ x, & 0 \leq x < 1 \\ \frac{1}{x}, & x \geq 1 \end{cases}$ then the value of $f\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) + f(1) + f(-2)$ is

- (A) 2 (B) $\frac{1}{4}$ (C) $\frac{11}{2}$ (D) 0

Solution: $f\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) + f(1) + f(-2) = \frac{1}{2} + 1 + 4 = \frac{11}{2}$

2. A relation R is defined from $\{2, 3, 4, 5\}$ to $\{3, 6, 7, 10\}$ by $xRy \Leftrightarrow x$ is relatively prime to y . Then, domain of R is

- (A) $\{2, 3, 5\}$ (B) $\{3, 5\}$ (C) $\{2, 3, 4\}$ (D) $\{2, 3, 4, 5\}$

Option (D), Solution: since $R = \{(2, 3), (2, 7), (3, 7), (3, 10), (4, 3), (4, 7), (5, 3), (5, 6), (5, 7)\}$

3. Let $A = \{1, 2, 3\}$, $B = \{2, 3, 4\}$, then which of the following is a function from A to B ?

- (A) $\{(1, 2), (1, 3), (2, 3), (3, 3)\}$ (B) $\{(1, 3), (2, 4)\}$
(C) $\{(1, 3), (2, 2), (3, 3)\}$ (D) $\{(1, 2), (2, 3), (3, 2), (3, 4)\}$

Option (C), Solution: Since, no two ordered pairs do not have the same first element.

4. Which of the following is a function?

- (A) $\{(x, y) : y^2 = x, x, y \in R\}$ (B) $\{(x, y) : y = |x|, x, y \in R\}$
(C) $\{(x, y) : x^2 + y^2 = 4, x, y \in R\}$ (D) $\{(x, y) : 3x^2 - 4y^2 = 1, x, y \in R\}$

Option (B), Solution: By vertical line test of the graph or subjective method.

5. If $T \times M$ equals to $\{(2, 3), (2, 8), (3, 3), (3, 8)\}$ then set $T =$

- (A) $\{2, 3\}$ (B) $\{2, 3, 8\}$ (C) $\{(2, 3), (2, 8)\}$ (D) $\{3, 8\}$

Answer: (A) $\{2, 3\}$

6. If $n(A)$ and $n(B)$ is 1 and 2 respectively and the ordered pair $(9, -3)$ is in $B \times A$. Then the set $A =$

- (A) $\{9\}$ (B) $\{9, -3\}$ (C) $\{-3\}$ (D) cannot be determined

Answer: (C) $\{-3\}$

7. The range of the following relation R from a set of natural numbers N to itself and

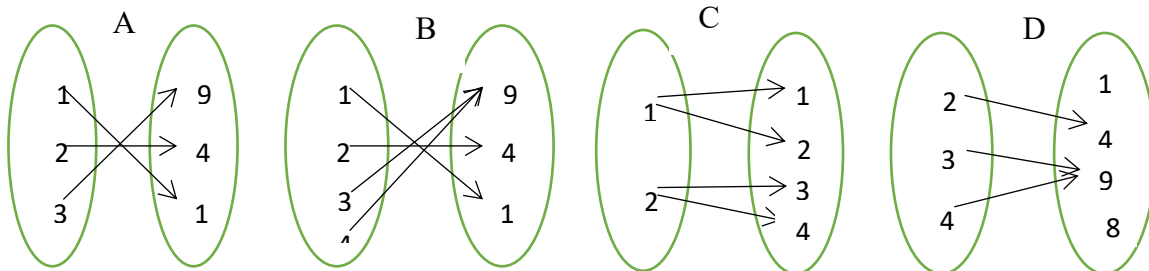
$R = \{(x, y) : y = 2x + 1, x, y \in N\}$.

- (A) Set of all natural numbers (B) set of all odd natural numbers
(C) Set of all odd natural numbers except 1 (D) Set of all even natural numbers

Answer: Set of all odd natural numbers except 1

Explanation: $y = 2(1) + 1 = 3$ $y = 2(2) + 1 = 5$ $y = 2(3) + 1 = 7$ and so on

8. Which one of the following relations is not a function?



(A) A

(B) B

(C) C

(D) D

Answer: (C), Explanation: In C the numbers 1 and 2 are both related to more than one number, so this cannot be a function.

9. The domain of $f(x) = \sqrt{4x - x^2}$ is

(a) $\mathbb{R} - [0, 4]$

(b) $\mathbb{R} - (0, 4)$

(c) $(0, 4)$

(d) $[0, 4]$

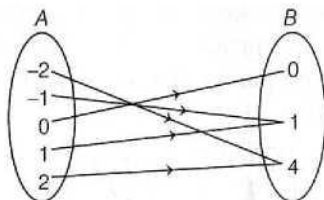
Solution: Clearly, $4x - x^2 \geq 0, x(4 - x) \geq 0$ or $x(x - 4) \leq 0 \rightarrow$ So, $x \in [0, 4]$

ASSERTION - REASON BASED QUESTIONS WITH SOLUTIONS

In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R). Pick the correct option:

- A) Both Assertion (A) and Reason(R) are true and Reason(R) is the correct explanation of Assertion (A).
- B) Both Assertion (A) and Reason(R) are true but Reason(R) is not the correct explanation of Assertion (A).
- C) Assertion (A) is true but Reason(R) is false.
- D) Assertion (A) is false but Reason(R) is true.

1. Consider the following statements



Assertion (A) The figure shows a relationship between the sets A and B.

Then, the relation in Set-builder form is $\{(x, y): y = x^2, x, y \in \mathbb{N} \text{ and } -2 \leq x \leq 2\}$.

Reason (R) The above Relation in Roster form is $\{(-1, 1), (-2, 4), (0, 0), (1, 1), (2, 4)\}$.

Solution: Assertion In Set builder form, $R = \{(x, y): y = x^2, x, y \in \mathbb{Z} \text{ and } -2 \leq x \leq 2\}, [\because 0 \notin \mathbb{N}]$

The relation shown in figure is represented in Roster form as $R = \{(-2, 4), (-1, 1), (0, 0), (1, 1), (2, 4)\}$

We observe that, second element of each ordered pair is the square of first element.

Hence, Assertion is false, Reason is true.

2. **Assertion (A):** The domain of the function $f(x) = \sqrt{4 - x^2}$ is $[-2, 2]$.

Reason (R): The square root function is only defined for non-negative real numbers.

Answer: C) Assertion (A) is true and Reason(R) is false.

Solution: Inside the square root, $4 - x^2 \geq 0$ implies $x \in [-2, 2]$.

3. **Assertion(A):** The domain of the function $f(x) = \frac{1}{x-1}$ is $\mathbb{R} - \{1\}$.

Reason(R): The function $f(x)$ is undefined at $x = 1$, so it can never have value at $x = 1$.

Answer: A) Both Assertion and Reason are true, and Reason is the correct explanation of Assertion.

Solution: The denominator cannot be zero, so the function is undefined at $x = 1$.

4. **Assertion (A):** The relation $R = \{(x, y): x^2 + y^2 = 1\}$ is a function.
Reason (R): For a given value of x , there can be more than one value of $y=f(x)$.
Answer: D) Assertion (A) is false but Reason (R) is true.
Explanation: The given relation defines a **circle**, and for some value of x , there are two values of y , so it's not a function.
5. **Assertion (A):** The modulus function is defined for all real numbers.
Reason (R): $|x| \geq 0$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$.
Answer: B) Both Assertion and Reason are true, but Reason is not the correct explanation of Assertion.
Solution: The domain is all real numbers (definition based), and the range is $[0, \infty)$ due to the non-negative nature, which the Reason states.
6. **Assertion (A):** The graph of a constant function is a straight line parallel to the x -axis.
Reason (R): A constant function has the form $f(x) = c$, where c is a fixed real number.
Answer: A) Both Assertion and Reason are true, and Reason is the correct explanation of Assertion. **Solution:** Since $f(x)$ is always constant, the line is horizontal (parallel to x -axis).

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS WITH SOLUTION

1. Let $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$. Let R be a relation on A defined by $\{(a, b): a, b \in A, b \text{ is exactly divisible by } a\}$ (i) Write R in roster form (ii) Find the domain of R (iii) Find the range of R .
Solution:
 (i) $R = \{(1, 1), (1, 2), (1, 3), (1, 4), (1, 5), (1, 6), (2, 2), (2, 4), (2, 6), (3, 3), (3, 6), (4, 4), (5, 5), (6, 6)\}$
 (ii) Domain (R) = $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$ (iii) Range (R) = $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$
2. If the ordered pairs $(x, -1)$ and $(5, y)$ belong to the set $\{(a, b): b = 2a - 3\}$, find the values of x and y .
Solution: $b = 2a - 3 \Rightarrow -1 = 2x - 3 \Rightarrow 2 = 2x \Rightarrow x = 1$, Similarly $y = 2(5) - 3 \Rightarrow y = 10 - 3 = 7$
3. If $P = \{1, 2\}$, form the set $P \times P \times P$ and write down the number of elements in $P \times P \times P$.
Solution: $P \times P \times P = \{(1, 1, 1), (1, 1, 2), (1, 2, 1), (1, 2, 2), (2, 1, 1), (2, 1, 2), (2, 2, 1), (2, 2, 2)\}$.
 Number of elements = 8
4. Find the domain of function $f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}$.
Solution: Because, the denominator of the fraction is a square root, it is undefined for negative values of x and not defined for $x=0$. So, $x > 0$. (However, $1/0$ is also undefined, so x cannot equal zero). Therefore, the domain = $\{x \in \mathbb{R} \mid x > 0\}$
5. Find the range of function $f(x) = \sqrt{x} - 2$.
Solution: $\sqrt{x}$ can only be zero or positive i.e. $\sqrt{x} \geq 0$ (by adding -2 on both the sides of inequality). Then, $\sqrt{x} - 2 \geq 0 - 2$ then $f(x) \geq -2$, Then, $\sqrt{x} - 2$ must be greater than or equal to -2 .
 So, the range = $\{y \in \mathbb{R} \mid y \geq -2\}$
6. Find the range of function $f(x) = \frac{|x-4|}{x-4}$.
Solution: $f(x) = \frac{|x-4|}{x-4} = \begin{cases} \frac{x-4}{x-4} = 1 \\ \frac{-(x-4)}{x-4} = -1 \end{cases}$ if $x \geq 4$ and if $x < 4$

Thus, the range of $f(x) = \frac{|x-4|}{x-4}$ is $\{1, -1\}$

7. Find the domain of function $f(x) = \frac{x}{x^2+3x+2}$.

Solution: f is a rational function of the form $\frac{g(x)}{h(x)}$, where $g(x)=x$ and $h(x)=x^2 + 3x + 2$.

Now $h(x) \neq 0 \Rightarrow x^2 + 3x + 2 \neq 0 \Rightarrow (x+1)(x+2) \neq 0$

$\Rightarrow$ Domain of the given function is $\mathbb{R} - \{-1, -2\}$.

8. Find the value and domain of $f + g$, if f and g are two functions given by

$f = \{(2, 4), (5, 6), (8, -1), (10, -3)\}$ and $g = \{(2, 5), (7, 1), (8, 4), (10, 13), (11, -5)\}$.

Solution: Since Domain of $f = D_f = \{2, 5, 8, 10\}$ and Domain of $g = D_g = \{2, 7, 8, 10, 11\}$

Then, $f+g = \{(2,9), (8,3), (10,10)\} \therefore$ Domain of $(f + g) = \{x \mid x \in D_f \cap D_g\} = \{2, 8, 10\}$

9. If $f(x) = \frac{1}{x-2}$ and $g(x) = \frac{1}{x+2}$, then what is $(f - g)(x)$ where $x \in \mathbb{R} - \{-2, 2\}$

Solution: $(f - g)(x) = f(x) - g(x) = \frac{1}{x-2} - \frac{1}{x+2} = \frac{x+2-x+2}{(x-2)(x+2)} = \frac{4}{(x-2)(x+2)} = \frac{4}{x^2-4}$

10. Redefine the function: $f(x) = |x - 1| - |x + 6|$

Solution: Given function is $f(x) = |x - 1| - |x + 6|$, Redefine of the function as:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} -(x-1) + (x+6), & x < -6 \\ -(x-1) - (x+6), & -6 \leq x \leq 1 \\ x-1 - (x+6), & x \geq 1 \end{cases} \quad f(x) = \begin{cases} -x+1+x+6, & x < -6 \\ -x+1-x-6, & -6 \leq x \leq 1 \\ x-1-x-6, & x \geq 1 \end{cases}$$

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 7, & x < -6 \\ -2x-5, & -6 \leq x \leq 1 \\ -7, & x \geq 1 \end{cases}$$

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTION WITH SOLUTION

1. If $y = f(x) = \frac{ax-b}{bx-a}$, show that $x = f(y)$.

$$\text{Solution: } f(y) = f(f(x)) = \frac{a\left(\frac{ax-b}{bx-a}\right) - b}{b\left(\frac{ax-b}{bx-a}\right) - a} = \frac{a^2x - ab - b^2x + ab}{abx - b^2 - abx + a^2} = \frac{(a^2 - b^2)x}{(a^2 - b^2)} = x$$

2. If $f(x) = x^2 + x - 6$ and $g(x) = \frac{1}{x+3}$ then what is $(f \cdot g)(x)$ and also find its domain?

$$\text{Solution: } (f \cdot g)(x) = f(x)g(x) = (x^2 + x - 6) \times \frac{1}{x+3} = (x-2)(x+3) \times \frac{1}{x+3}$$

$$(f \cdot g)(x) = x - 2 \text{ if } x + 3 \neq 0$$

The domain of $(f \cdot g)$ depends on the common domain of f and g . $D_f = \mathbb{R}$ and $D_g = \{x \in \mathbb{R} : x \neq -3\}$

So, $\text{Dom}(f \cdot g) = \{x \in \mathbb{R} : x \neq -3\}$

3. If $f(x) = (x - 3)^2$ and $g(x) = (5 - x)^2$ then what is $(f - g)(x)$ and what is its domain and range?

$$(f - g)(x) = f(x) - g(x) = (x - 3)^2 - (5 - x)^2 = x^2 - 6x + 9 - 25 - x^2 + 10x = 4x - 16$$

This is the equation of a straight line, so Domain = $\mathbb{R}$ and Range = $\mathbb{R}$. Since, the common domain of f and g is $\mathbb{R}$ (domain of polynomial function is always $\mathbb{R}$)

4. If $f(x) = \sqrt{x-3}$ and $g(x) = \sqrt{4-x}$ then what is the domain of $(f + g)$?

$$\text{Solution: } (f + g)(x) = f(x) + g(x) = \sqrt{x-3} + \sqrt{4-x}$$

$f(x)$ is only defined for values of x such that $x - 3 \geq 0 \Rightarrow x \geq 3$, Therefore $D_f = \{x \in \mathbb{R} \mid x \geq 3\}$
 $g(x)$ is only defined for values of x such that $4 - x \geq 0 \Rightarrow x \leq 4$, Therefore $D_g = \{x \in \mathbb{R} \mid x \leq 4\}$
The domain of $f + g$ is the set of all Real Numbers that are in the domain of f and in the domain of g . Therefore, common domain of $D_{f+g} = \{x \in \mathbb{R} \mid x \geq 3 \text{ and } x \leq 4\} = \{x \in \mathbb{R} \mid 3 \leq x \leq 4\}$.

5. Let $f = \{(1, 1), (2, 3), (0, -1), (-1, -3)\}$ be a linear function from $\mathbb{Z}$ into $\mathbb{Z}$. Find $f(x)$.

Solution: If f is a linear function $\Rightarrow y = f(x) = mx + c$. Also, $(1, 1) \Rightarrow f(1) = m + c \Rightarrow m + c = 1$
 $(0, -1) \in R, f(0) = c \Rightarrow -1 = c \Rightarrow m - 1 = 1$. This gives $m = 2$ and $f(x) = 2x - 1$.

6. Let $P = \{x \in \mathbb{Z} : 0 < x < 5\}$ and $Q = \{y \in \mathbb{Z} : y \text{ is a prime number and } y < 10\}$

(a) Find the Cartesian product $P \times Q$ (b) Find a subset $S \subseteq P \times Q$ such that the sum of elements in each ordered pair is a multiple of 3. List all such pairs.

Solution: (a) $P = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ $Q = \{2, 3, 5, 7\}$

$P \times Q = \{(1, 2), (1, 3), (1, 5), (1, 7), (2, 2), (2, 3), (2, 5), (2, 7), (3, 2), (3, 3), (3, 5), (3, 7), (4, 2), (4, 3), (4, 5), (4, 7)\}$ (b) $S = \{(1, 2), (1, 5), (2, 7), (3, 3), (4, 2), (4, 5)\}$

7. A function is defined as $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 & \text{for } x \geq 0 \\ 2x + 3 & \text{for } x < 0 \end{cases}$

(a) Evaluate $f(3)$ and $f(-2)$. (b) Find the domain and range of function.

Solution: (a) $f(3) = 3^2 = 9$, $f(-2) = 2(-2) + 3 = -1$

(b) The function is defined for all real values of x . So, domain of function is $\mathbb{R}$. Also, for $x \geq 0$, $f(x) = x^2$. The minimum value of function is 0 at $x = 0$ and $f(x) \rightarrow \infty$ as $x \rightarrow \infty$

So, this part contributes $[0, \infty)$ to the range. Also, for $x < 0$, $f(x) = 2x + 3$

As $x \rightarrow 0^-$, $f(x) \rightarrow 3$ and $x \rightarrow -\infty$, $f(x) \rightarrow -\infty$. So, this part contributes $(-\infty, 3)$ to the range but not including 3. Thus, range of given function is $(-\infty, 3) \cup (3, \infty)$ or $\mathbb{R} - \{3\}$.

8. Let f be a subset of $\mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z}$ defined by $f = \{(ab, a + b) : a, b \in \mathbb{Z}\}$. Is f a function from $\mathbb{Z}$ to $\mathbb{Z}$? Justify your answer.

Solution: Given $f = \{(ab, a + b) : a, b \in \mathbb{Z}\} \Rightarrow f(ab) = a + b, a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$. Let $a = 0, b = 2$, then $f(0 \times 2) = 0 + 2 \Rightarrow f(0) = 2$ and Let $a = 0, b = 3$, then $f(0 \times 3) = 0 + 3 \Rightarrow f(0) = 3$. Thus, the element 0 of the domain of f has two different images. Therefore, the relation f is not a function

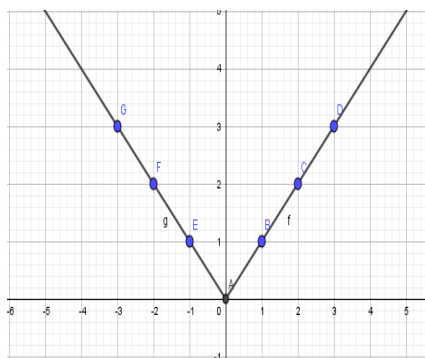
LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS WITH SOLUTIONS

1. Draw the graph of $f(x) = |x|$ and write its domain and range.

Solution: $f(x) = \begin{cases} x & \text{if } x \geq 0 \\ -x & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}$

For different values of x , the value of function is as

x	$f(x)$
-3	3
-2	2
-1	1
0	0
1	1
2	2
3	3



follows

Thus, Domain of f = All real numbers and Range of f = All non-negative real numbers or $[0, \infty)$.

2. Method to Find the Sets when Cartesian Product is given for finding these two sets, we write first element of each ordered pair in first set say A and corresponding second element in second set B (say). Number of Elements in Cartesian Product of Two Sets: If there are p elements in set A and q elements in set B, then there will be pq elements in $A \times B$ i.e. if $n(A)=p$ and $n(B)=q$, then $n(A \times B)=pq$. Based on this information, answer the following questions.

(i) If $A \times B = \{(a, 1), (b, 3), (a, 3), (b, 1), (a, 2), (b, 2)\}$. Then find sets A and B.

(ii) If the set A has 3 elements and set B has 4 elements, then find the number of elements in $A \times B$.

(iii) A and B are two sets given in such a way that $A \times B$ contains 6 elements. If three elements of $A \times B$ are (1,3), (2,5) and (3,3), then find sets A, B. (iv) Find the remaining elements of $A \times B$. (v) The cartesian product $P \times P$ has 16 elements among which are found (a,1) and (b, 2). Then, find the set P.

Solution: (i) Here, first element of each ordered pair of $A \times B$ gives the elements of set A and corresponding second element gives the elements of set B. $\therefore A = \{a, b\}$ and $B = \{1, 3, 2\}$

Note We write each element only one time in set, if it occurs more than one time.

(ii) Given, $n(A)=3$ and $n(B)=4$. $\therefore$ The number of elements in $A \times B$ is $n(A \times B) = n(A) \times n(B)$

$= 3 \times 4 = 12$ (iii) It is given that (1, 3), (2, 5) and (3, 3) are in $A \times B$. It follows that 1, 2, 3 are elements of A and 3, 5 are elements of B. $\therefore A = \{1, 2, 3\}$ and $B = \{3, 5\}$

(iv) $\because A = \{1, 2, 3\}$ and $B = \{3, 5\} \therefore A \times B = \{1, 2, 3\} \times \{3, 5\} = \{(1, 3), (1, 5), (2, 3), (2, 5), (3, 3), (3, 5)\}$. Hence, the remaining elements of $(A \times B)$ are (1, 5), (2, 3), (3, 5).

(v) Given, $n(P \times P) = 16 \Rightarrow n(P).n(P) = 16, \Rightarrow n(P) = 4 \dots$ (i)

Now, as $(a, 1) \in P \times P$ and $a \in P$ and $1 \in P$, Again, $(b, 2) \in P \times P, \therefore b \in P$ and $2 \in P$

$\Rightarrow a, b, 1, 2 \in P$. From Eq. (i), it is clear that P has exactly four elements.

3. Draw the graph of following function and write it's domain and range.

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 - x, & \text{if } x < 0 \\ 1, & \text{if } x = 0 \\ x + 1, & \text{if } x > 0 \end{cases}$$

Solution: $f(x) = 1 - x, x < 0$, this gives

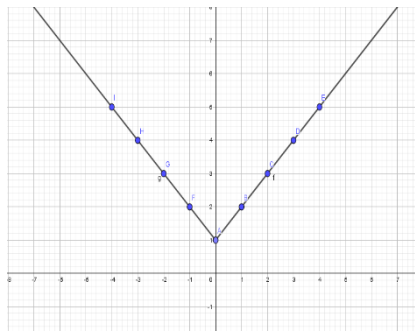
$$f(-4) = 1 - (-4) = 5; f(-3) = 1 - (-3) = 4,$$

$$f(-2) = 1 - (-2) = 3; f(-1) = 1 - (-1) = 2; \text{ etc,}$$

$$f(1) = 2, f(2) = 3, f(3) = 4,$$

$$f(4) = 5 \text{ and so on for } f(x) = x + 1, x > 0.$$

Domain: All real numbers. Range: $[1, \infty]$



4. Assume that $A = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 14\}$. Define a relation R from A to A as follows- $R = \{(x, y): 3x - y = 0, \text{ such that } x, y \in A\}$. Determine and write down its range, domain, and co domain.

Solution: $R = \{(x, y): 3x - y = 0, \text{ where } x, y \in A\}$.

It means that $R = \{(x, y): 3x = y, \text{ where } x, y \in A\}$

Hence, $R = \{(1, 3), (2, 6), (3, 9), (4, 12)\}$

Since the domain of R is defined as the set of all first elements of the ordered pairs in the given relation. Hence, the domain of $R = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$

To determine the co domain, we know that the entire set A is the co-domain of the relation R.

Therefore, the co-domain of $R = A = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, 14\}$

As it is known that, the range of R is defined as the set of all second elements in the relation ordered pair. Hence, the range of R is given is $\{3, 6, 9, 12\}$

5. Draw the graph of function $f(x) = |x - 2| + |x - 3|$

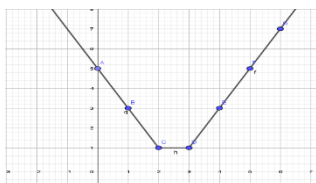
Solution: $f(x) = |x - 2| + |x - 3|$

When $x < 2$, $f(x) = -(x - 2) - (x - 3) = -x + 2 - x + 3 = -2x + 5$

When $2 \leq x \leq 3$, $f(x) = (x - 2) - (x - 3) = x - 2 - x + 3 = 1$ is a constant function

When $x > 3$, $f(x) = (x - 2) + (x - 3) = x - 2 + x - 3 = 2x - 5$

x	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
f(x)	5	3	1	1	3	5	7	9



CASE STUDY BASED QUESTIONS WITH SOLUTIONS

1. Maths teacher started the lesson Relations and Functions in Class XI. He explained the following topics:

Ordered Pairs: The ordered pair of two elements a and b is denoted by (a, b) : a is first element (or first component) and b is second element (or second component). Two ordered pairs are equal if their corresponding elements are equal. i.e., $(a, b) = (c, d) \Rightarrow a = c$ and $b = d$.

Cartesian Product of Two Sets: For two non-empty sets A and B, the cartesian product $A \times B$ is the set of all ordered pairs of elements from sets A and B. In symbolic form, it can be written as $A \times B = \{(a, b) : a \in A, b \in B\}$. Based on the above topics, answer the following questions.

- If $(a - 3, b + 7) = (3, 7)$, then find the value of a and b
- If $(x + 6, y - 2) = (0, 6)$, then find the value of x and y
- If $(x + 2, 4) = (5, 2x + y)$, then find the value of x and y
- Find x and y, if $(x + 3, 5) = (6, 2x + y)$.

Sol: (i) We know that, two ordered pairs are equal, if their corresponding elements are equal.

So $(a - 3, b + 7) = (3, 7) \Rightarrow a - 3 = 3$ and $b + 7 = 7$ [equating corresponding elements]

$$\Rightarrow a = 3 + 3 \text{ and } b = 7 - 7 \Rightarrow a = 6 \text{ and } b = 0$$

(ii) $(x + 6, y - 2) = (0, 6) \Rightarrow x + 6 = 0 \Rightarrow x = -6$ and $y - 2 = 6 \Rightarrow y = 6 + 2 = 8$

(iii) $(x + 2, 4) = (5, 2x + y) \Rightarrow x + 2 = 5 \Rightarrow x = 5 - 2 = 3$ and $4 = 2x + y \Rightarrow 4 = 2 \times 3 + y$ implies $y = 4 - 6 = -2$

(iv) $x + 3 = 6, 2x + y = 5 \Rightarrow x = 3, y = -1$

2. Let $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ and $B = \{a, b, c, d\}$. Consider the following relations from A to B:

Relation R_1 : $\{(1, a), (2, b), (3, c), (4, d)\}$, **Relation R_2 :** $\{(1, a), (2, b), (2, c), (3, d)\}$

Relation R_3 : $\{(1, a), (2, a), (3, a), (4, a)\}$

Answer the following questions using the information given above.

- Which of the relations is a function? (b) Which of the represents many to one function?
- If we define a new relation $R_4 = \{(1, a), (2, b), (3, c)\}$, Is it a function from A to B? Justify your answer.

Solution: (a) R_1 and R_3 (b) R_3 since many elements in the domain have the same image

(c) No, as R_4 doesn't assign any value to 4, which is in A. So it **violates** the rule that **every element of the domain must have a unique image**.

3. You are given a table that shows a relation from set $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ to set B.

X	1	2	3	4
f(x)	5	7	5	8

Answer the following questions using the information given above.

- (a) Is this relation a function? Justify it with proper explanation.
 (b) Which of the following would **invalidate** this table as a function? Explain it.

- A) Adding (2, 9) B) Adding (5, 9)
 C) Adding (4, 8) D) Replacing (3, 5) with (3, 7)

Solution: (a) Yes because for each value of x, we get different values of f(x).

- (c) By adding (2, 9) we get two different values of function for $x=2$.

4. You're given the following description of a graph of a function f(x)

The graph is a continuous curve passing through the points:

$(-3, 4)$, $(-2, 2)$, $(0, 0)$, $(2, -2)$ and $(3, -1)$. It is defined for $x \in [-3, 3]$

The curve decreases from $x = -3$ to $x = 2$, then increases from $x = 2$ to $x = 3$.

Answer the following questions using the information given above.

- (a) What is the **domain** of the function? (b) What is the **range** of the function?
 (c) On which interval is the function **decreasing**? What is the **minimum value** of the function?

Solution: (a) $[-3, 3]$ (b) $[-2, 4]$

(c) The curve goes downhill (function values drop) from $x = -3$ to $x = 2$. The lowest point on the graph is $(2, -2)$, so minimum value is -2 .

5. You're given the function: $f(x) = |x - 2|$. This is a **V-shaped graph**, and its key properties are:

It shifts the standard $|x|$ graph **2 units to the right**. The vertex (point of minimum) is at $(2, 0)$

The function is piecewise defined as $f(x) = \begin{cases} 2 - x, & \text{if } x < 2 \\ x - 2, & \text{if } x \geq 2 \end{cases}$

Answer the following questions using the information given above.

- (a) What is the value of $f(2)$ (b) Check whether $(3, 1)$ lies **on** the graph or not?
 (c) What is the **domain** and range of $f(x) = |x - 2|$?

Solution: (a) $f(2) = |2 - 2| = 0$ (b) $f(3) = |3 - 2| = 1 \Rightarrow (3, 1)$ is on the graph

(c) Domain = $(-\infty, \infty)$ as it is defined for all real numbers.

Range = $[0, \infty)$ as Absolute value is **never negative**. Smallest value is at $x=2$ where $f(2)=0$

CHAPTER – 3: TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS

Definitions and Formulae:

Degree measure: If a rotation from the initial side to terminal side is $\left(\frac{1}{360}\right)^{th}$ of a revolution, the angle is said to have a measure of one degree, written as 1° .

Radian measure: There is another unit for measurement of an angle, called the radian measure. Angle subtended at the centre by an arc of length 1 unit in a unit circle (circle of radius 1 unit) is said to have a measure of 1 radian.

Domain and Range

Function	Domain	Range
$\sin x$	R	$[-1, 1]$
$\cos x$	R	$[-1, 1]$
$\tan x$	$R - \{x = (2n+1)\pi/2, n \in Z\}$	R
$\cot x$	$R - \{x = n\pi, n \in Z\}$	R
$\sec x$	$R - \{x = (2n+1)\pi/2, n \in Z\}$	$(-\infty, -1] \cup [1, \infty)$
$\operatorname{cosec} x$	$R - \{x = n\pi, n \in Z\}$	$(-\infty, -1] \cup [1, \infty)$

Signs in Quadrants (ASTC Rule)

- **1st Quadrant:** All positive
- **2nd Quadrant:** sine & cosecant is positive
- **3rd Quadrant:** tangent & cotangent is positive
- **4th Quadrant:** cosine & secant is positive

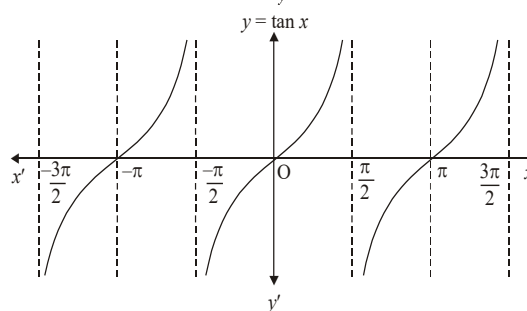
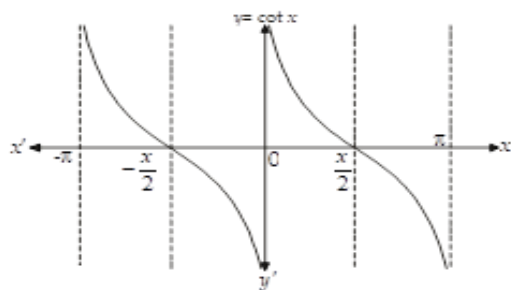
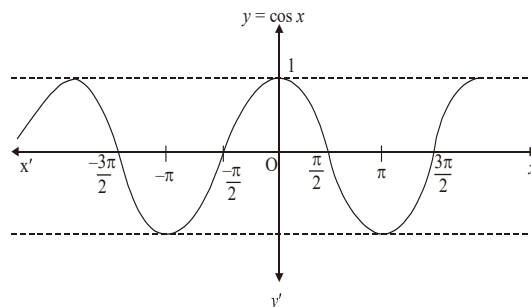
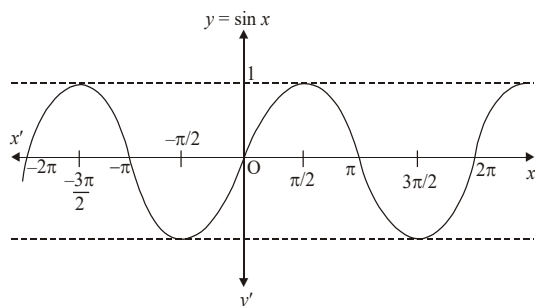
(A mnemonic: **All School to College**)

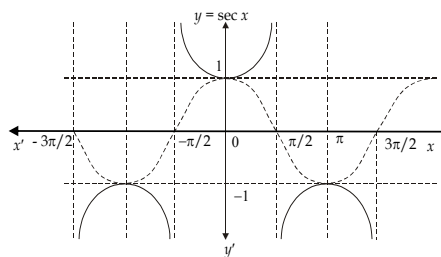
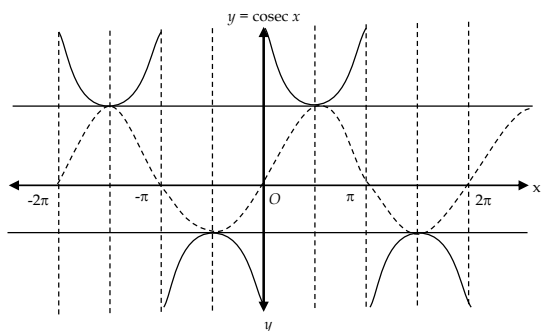
Important Formulae:

- If in a circle of radius r , an arc of length l subtends an angle of θ radians, then $l = r\theta$
- $\cos(2n\pi + x) = \cos x$, $\sin(2n\pi + x) = \sin x$, n is an integer
- $\sin(-x) = -\sin x$, $\tan(-x) = -\tan x$, $\cot(-x) = -\cot x$,
- $\operatorname{cosec}(-x) = \operatorname{cosec} x$, $\cos(-x) = \cos x$, $\sec(-x) = \sec x$
- $\cos(x + y) = \cos x \cos y - \sin x \sin y$
- $\cos(x - y) = \cos x \cos y + \sin x \sin y$
- $\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - x\right) = \sin x$, $\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - x\right) = \cos x$
- $\sin(x + y) = \sin x \cos y + \cos x \sin y$
- $\sin(x - y) = \sin x \cos y - \cos x \sin y$
- $\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + x\right) = -\sin x$, $\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + x\right) = \cos x$
- $\cos(\pi - x) = -\cos x$, $\sin(\pi - x) = \sin x$
- $\cos(\pi + x) = -\cos x$, $\sin(\pi + x) = -\sin x$
- $\cos(2\pi - x) = \cos x$, $\sin(2\pi - x) = -\sin x$
- **If none of the angles x, y and $(x \pm y)$ is an odd multiple of $\frac{\pi}{2}$, then**
$$\tan(x + y) = \frac{\tan x + \tan y}{1 - \tan x \tan y}, \quad \tan(x - y) = \frac{\tan x - \tan y}{1 + \tan x \tan y}$$
- **If none of the angles x, y and $(x \pm y)$ is a multiple of π , then**

$$\cot(x+y) = \frac{\cot x \cot y - 1}{\cot y + \cot x}, \quad \cot(x-y) = \frac{\cot x \cot y + 1}{\cot y - \cot x}$$

- $\cos 2x = \cos^2 x - \sin^2 x = 2\cos^2 x - 1 = 1 - 2\sin^2 x = \frac{1 - \tan^2 x}{1 + \tan^2 x}$
- $\sin 2x = 2\sin x \cos x = \frac{2\tan x}{1 + \tan^2 x}$
- $\tan 2x = \frac{2\tan x}{1 - \tan^2 x}$
- $\sin 3x = 3\sin x - 4\sin^3 x$
- $\cos 3x = 4\cos^3 x - 3\cos x$
- $\tan 3x = \frac{3\tan x - \tan^3 x}{1 - 3\tan^2 x}$
- $\cos x + \cos y = 2\cos \frac{x+y}{2} \cos \frac{x-y}{2}$
- $\cos x - \cos y = -2 \sin \frac{x+y}{2} \sin \frac{x-y}{2}$
- $\sin x + \sin y = 2 \sin \frac{x+y}{2} \cos \frac{x-y}{2}$
- $\sin x - \sin y = 2 \cos \frac{x+y}{2} \sin \frac{x-y}{2}$
- $2\cos x \cos y = \cos(x+y) + \cos(x-y)$
- $-2\sin x \sin y = \cos(x+y) - \cos(x-y)$
- $2\sin x \cos y = \sin(x+y) + \sin(x-y)$
- $2\cos x \sin y = \sin(x+y) - \sin(x-y)$
- $\sin(A+B) \sin(A-B) = \sin^2 A - \sin^2 B = \cos^2 B - \cos^2 A$
- $\cos(A+B) \cos(A-B) = \cos^2 A - \sin^2 B = \cos^2 B - \sin^2 A$





MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS

- 1) The large hand of a clock is 42 cm long. How much distance does its extremity move in 20 minutes?
 (a) 88 cm (b) 80 cm (c) 75 cm (d) 77 cm

Ans. b) 88 cm

Solution : Angle sweeps by the minute hand in 20 minutes = $6^\circ \times 20 = 120^\circ = \frac{2\pi}{3}$ radians . Thus ,
 the distance does its extremity move in 20 minutes = arc of length $l = r\theta$

$$= 42 \times \frac{2\pi}{3} = 88 \text{ cm}$$

- 2) The value of $\tan 1^\circ \tan 2^\circ \tan 3^\circ \dots \tan 89^\circ$ is
 (a) 1 (b) 0 (c) $\frac{1}{2}$ (d) not defined

Ans. (a) 1

Solution: $\tan 1^\circ \tan 2^\circ \tan 3^\circ \dots \tan 88^\circ \tan 89^\circ$
 $= (\tan 1^\circ \tan 89^\circ) (\tan 2^\circ \tan 88^\circ) \dots (\tan 44^\circ \tan 46^\circ) \tan 45^\circ$
 $= (\tan 1^\circ \cot 1^\circ) (\tan 2^\circ \cot 2^\circ) \dots (\tan 44^\circ \cot 44^\circ) \times 1$
 $= 1 \times 1 \times 1 \times \dots \times 1 = 1$

- 3) If $\sin x + \cos x = \frac{1}{5}$ then $\tan 2x$ is
 (a) $\frac{25}{17}$ (b) $\frac{7}{25}$ (c) $\frac{25}{7}$ (d) $\frac{24}{7}$

Ans. d)

Solution : $(\sin x + \cos x)^2 = \frac{1}{25} \Rightarrow 1 + \sin 2x = \frac{1}{25}$
 $\Rightarrow \sin 2x = -\frac{24}{25}$ & $\cos 2x = -\frac{7}{25} \Rightarrow \tan 2x = \frac{24}{7}$

- 4) Value of $\sin 10^\circ + \sin 20^\circ + \sin 30^\circ + \dots + \sin 360^\circ$ is
 (a) 1 (b) 0 (c) 2 (d) $\frac{1}{2}$

Ans. b) 0

Solution : $\sin (360^\circ - x) = -\sin x \Rightarrow \sin 10^\circ + \sin 20^\circ + \sin 30^\circ + \dots + \sin 360^\circ = 0$

- 5) If $\sin A = \frac{3}{5}$, $0 < A < \frac{\pi}{2}$ and $\cos B = -\frac{12}{13}$, $\pi < B < \frac{3\pi}{2}$, then the value of $\sin (A - B)$ is
 (a) $-\frac{13}{82}$ (b) $-\frac{15}{65}$ (c) $-\frac{13}{65}$ (d) $-\frac{16}{65}$

Ans . (d) $-\frac{16}{65}$

Solution : $\sin A = \frac{3}{5} \Rightarrow \cos A = \frac{4}{5}$, $\cos B = -\frac{12}{13} \Rightarrow \sin B = -\frac{5}{13}$

$\therefore \sin(A - B) = \frac{3}{5} \times \left(-\frac{12}{13}\right) - \frac{4}{5} \times \left(-\frac{5}{13}\right) = -\frac{36}{65} + \frac{20}{65} = -\frac{16}{65}$

6) $1 + \cos 2x + \cos 4x + \cos 6x =$

(a) $2 \cos x \cos 2x \cos 3x$

(b) $4 \sin x \cos 2x \cos 3x$

(c) $4 \cos x \cos 2x \cos 3x$

(d) None of these

Ans. c) $4 \cos x \cos 2x \cos 3x$

Solution : $1 + \cos 4x + \cos 2x + \cos 6x = 2\cos^2 2x + 2\cos 4x \cos 2x$

$\Rightarrow 2\cos 2x(\cos 2x + \cos 4x) \Rightarrow 2\cos 2x \cdot 2\cos 3x \cos x \Rightarrow 4\cos x \cos 2x \cos 3x$

7) If in two circles, arcs of the same length subtend angles 45° and 60° at Centre, then the ratio of their radii is

(a) 2:3

(b) 2:5

(c) 3:4

(d) 4:3

Ans. (d) 4:3

Solution : ATQ, we have $l_1 = l_2 \Rightarrow r_1 \theta_1 = r_2 \theta_2$

$\Rightarrow r_1 : r_2 = \frac{\pi}{3} : \frac{\pi}{4} = 4:3$

8) The value of $\sin(\pi - \theta) \sin(\pi + \theta) \operatorname{cosec}^2 \theta =$

(a) 0

(b) 1

(c) -1

(d) $\frac{1}{2}$

Ans. (c) -1

Solution : $\sin(\pi - \theta) \sin(\pi + \theta) \operatorname{cosec}^2 \theta = \sin \theta (-\sin \theta) \times \frac{1}{\sin^2 \theta} = -1$

9) The value of $\tan 3A - \tan 2A - \tan A$ is equal to

(a) $\tan 3A \tan 2A \tan A$

(b) $-\tan 3A \tan 2A \tan A$

(c) $\tan A \tan 2A - \tan 2A \tan 3A - \tan 3A \tan A$

(d) None of these

Ans. (a) $\tan 3A \tan 2A \tan A$

Solution : $\tan 3A = \tan(2A + A) = \frac{\tan 2A + \tan A}{1 - \tan 2A \tan A}$

$\Rightarrow \tan 3A - \tan A \tan 2A \tan 3A = \tan 2A + \tan A$

$\Rightarrow \tan 3A - \tan 2A - \tan A = \tan A \tan 2A \tan 3A$

10) If $\tan A = \frac{b}{a}$, then value of $a \cos 2A + b \sin 2A =$

(a) -b

(b) a

(c) -a

(d) b

Ans. (b) a

Solution : $a \cos 2A + b \sin 2A = a \left(\frac{1 - \tan^2 A}{1 + \tan^2 A} \right) + b \left(\frac{2 \tan A}{1 + \tan^2 A} \right)$

$\Rightarrow a \left(\frac{1 - \frac{b^2}{a^2}}{1 + \frac{b^2}{a^2}} \right) + b \left(\frac{2 \times \frac{b}{a}}{1 + \frac{b^2}{a^2}} \right) = a$

ASSERTION - REASON BASED QUESTIONS

In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason(R). Pick the correct option:

- A) Both Assertion (A) and Reason(R) are true and Reason(R) is the correct explanation of Assertion (A).
- B) Both Assertion (A) and Reason(R) are true but Reason(R) is NOT the correct explanation of Assertion (A).
- C) Assertion (A) is true but Reason(R) is false.
- D) Assertion (A) is false but Reason(R) is true.

1) **Assertion (A):** The maximum value of $\sin x + \cos x$ is 2.

Reason(R) : The maximum value of $\sin x$ is 1 and maximum value $\cos x$ is 1

Answer : D

Solution: The maximum value of $\sin x + \cos x$ is $\sqrt{2}$ at $x = \frac{\pi}{4}$. So the Assertion (A) is false and reason (R) is true.

2) **Assertion (A) :** $\tan 5A - \tan 3A - \tan 2A = \tan 5A \tan 3A \tan 2A$

Reason(R) : $x = y + z \Rightarrow \tan x - \tan y - \tan z = \tan x \tan y \tan z$.

Answer: A

Solution : If $\tan A = \tan (B + C) \Rightarrow \tan A = \frac{\tan B + \tan C}{1 - \tan B \tan C}$ which imply the result
 $\tan A - \tan B - \tan C = \tan A \tan B \tan C$.

Hence, Both Assertion (A) and Reason(R) are true and Reason(R) is the correct explanation of Assertion (A).

3) **Assertion (A):**

$$\cos^3 \alpha + \cos^3 \left(\alpha + \frac{2\pi}{3} \right) + \cos^3 \left(\alpha + \frac{4\pi}{3} \right) = 3 \cos \alpha \cos \left(\alpha + \frac{2\pi}{3} \right) \cos \left(\alpha + \frac{4\pi}{3} \right)$$

Reason(R) : If $a + b + c = 0$ then $a^3 + b^3 + c^3 = 3abc$

Answer: A

Solution: Assertion (A): $\cos \alpha + \cos \left(\alpha + \frac{2\pi}{3} \right) + \cos \left(\alpha + \frac{4\pi}{3} \right) = 0$
 $\Rightarrow \cos^3 \alpha + \cos^3 \left(\alpha + \frac{2\pi}{3} \right) + \cos^3 \left(\alpha + \frac{4\pi}{3} \right) = 3 \cos \alpha \cos \left(\alpha + \frac{2\pi}{3} \right) \cos \left(\alpha + \frac{4\pi}{3} \right)$ (true)

Hence, Both Assertion (A) and Reason(R) are true and Reason(R) is the correct explanation of Assertion (A).

4) **Assertion (A):** The ratio of the radii of two circles at the centres of which two equal arcs subtend angles of 30° and 70° is 21: 10.

Reason(R): Number of radians in an angle subtended at the centre of a circle by an arc is equal to the ratio of the length of the arc to the radius of the circle.

Answer: D

Solution: Assertion (A): $r_1 : r_2 = \theta_2 : \theta_1 \Rightarrow r_1 : r_2 = 7\frac{\pi}{18} : \frac{\pi}{6} = 7 : 3$ (false)

Reason(R) : $\theta = \frac{l}{r}$ (True)

5) **Assertion (A) :** $(\sin \theta + \cos \theta)^2 = \sin 2\theta$

Reason(R) : $\sin^2\theta + \cos^2\theta = 1$

Answer: D

Solution: $(\sin\theta + \cos\theta)^2 = 1 + \sin 2\theta$, So assertion is false and reason is true.

6) **Assertion (A):** $\cos(\pi - \theta) = -\cos\theta$

Reason(R): Cosine is an even function.

Answer: B

Solution: The assertion is true, but the reason is not the correct explanation. $\cos(\pi - \theta) = -\cos\theta$ is due to angle transformation, not the even nature of cosine. Cosine being even means $\cos(-x) = \cos(x)$.

7) **Assertion (A) :** Value of $\tan\left(-\frac{11\pi}{4}\right)$ is 1.

Reason (R) : $\sin(3\pi + \theta) = \sin\theta$

Answer: C)

Solution: $\tan\left(-\frac{11\pi}{4}\right) = -\tan\left(\frac{11\pi}{4}\right) = -\tan\left(3\pi - \frac{\pi}{4}\right) = \tan\frac{\pi}{4} = 1$

And $\sin(3\pi + \theta) = -\sin\theta$

8) **Assertion (A):** the value of $\cot\frac{A}{2} - \tan\frac{A}{2}$ is $2 \tan A$

Reason(R) : $\cot A$ is reciprocal of $\tan A$

Answer: D

Solution: $\cot\frac{A}{2} - \tan\frac{A}{2} = \frac{1 - \tan^2\frac{A}{2}}{\tan\frac{A}{2}} \Rightarrow 2 \left(\frac{1 - \tan^2\frac{A}{2}}{2 \tan\frac{A}{2}} \right) = 2 \times \frac{1}{\tan A} \Rightarrow 2 \cot A$

9) **Assertion (A):** The range of $4 + 5 \cos x$ is $[-1, 9]$

Reason(R): The value of $\cos x$ lies from -1 to 1 .

Answer: A

Solution: $-1 \leq \cos x \leq 1 \Rightarrow -5 \leq 5\cos x \leq 5$

$\Rightarrow -5 + 4 \leq 4 + 5\cos x \leq 5 + 4 \Rightarrow -1 \leq 4 + 5\cos x \leq 9$

$\Rightarrow$ both Assertion (A) and Reason (R) is correct and Reason(R) is the correct explanation of Assertion (A).

10) **Assertion (A):** The domain of $\tan x$ is $\mathbb{R} - \left\{ (2n+1)\frac{\pi}{2}, n \in \mathbb{Z} \right\}$

Reason(R) : $\tan x$ is undefined where $\cos x = 0$.

Answer: A

Solution: $\cos x = 0$ at $x = (2n+1)\frac{\pi}{2}, n \in \mathbb{Z}$

$\Rightarrow$ Hence, Both Assertion (A) and Reason(R) are true and Reason(R) is the correct explanation of Assertion (A).

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS

1) Find the value of $\cos\left(\frac{3\pi}{4} - x\right) - \cos\left(\frac{3\pi}{4} + x\right)$

Solution: $\cos\left(\frac{3\pi}{4} - x\right) - \cos\left(\frac{3\pi}{4} + x\right) =$

$= \cos\frac{3\pi}{4} \cos x + \sin\frac{3\pi}{4} \sin x - \cos\frac{3\pi}{4} \cos x + \sin\frac{3\pi}{4} \sin x$

$= 2 \sin\frac{3\pi}{4} \sin x = 2 \times \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \sin x = \sqrt{2} \sin x$

- 2) The angles of a triangle are in A.P., then, find the angles of the triangle in radians if greatest angle is three times the smallest angle.

Solution: let A, B and C be the angles of triangle. Since, A, B and C are in A.P.

$$\text{So, } 2B = A + C$$

$$\because A + B + C = \pi \Rightarrow 2B + B = \pi$$

$$\Rightarrow B = \frac{\pi}{3} \text{ and } C = 3A$$

$$\text{So, } A + \frac{\pi}{3} + 3A = \pi \Rightarrow A = \frac{\pi}{6} \text{ and } C = \frac{\pi}{2}$$

- 3) Find the value of $\cot\left(\frac{-15\pi}{4}\right)$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Solution: } \cot\left(\frac{-15\pi}{4}\right) &= -\cot\left(\frac{15\pi}{4}\right) \\ &= -\cot\left(2\pi + \frac{7\pi}{4}\right) = -\cot\left(\frac{7\pi}{4}\right) \\ &= -\cot\left(2\pi - \frac{\pi}{4}\right) = -(-\cot\frac{\pi}{4}) = 1 \end{aligned}$$

- 4) Prove that : $2\sin^2\frac{\pi}{6} + \operatorname{cosec}^2\frac{7\pi}{6} \cos^2\frac{\pi}{3} = \frac{3}{2}$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Solution: L.H.S: } 2\sin^2\frac{\pi}{6} + \operatorname{cosec}^2\frac{7\pi}{6} \cos^2\frac{\pi}{3} &= 2\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 + \operatorname{cosec}^2\left(\pi + \frac{\pi}{6}\right)\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 \\ &= \frac{2}{4} + (-\operatorname{cosec}\frac{\pi}{6})^2 \times \frac{1}{4} = \frac{1}{2} + 4 \times \frac{1}{4} = \frac{3}{2} \end{aligned}$$

- 5) Show that : $\cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{4} + x\right) - \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{4} - x\right)$ is independent of x.

Solution: we have , $\cos^2 A - \sin^2 B = \cos(A+B) \cos(A-B)$

$$\begin{aligned} \Rightarrow \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{4} + x\right) - \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{4} - x\right) &= \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{4} + x + \frac{\pi}{4} - x\right) \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{4} + x - \frac{\pi}{4} + x\right) \\ &= \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) \cos 2x = 0 \times \cos 2x = 0 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the given expression is independent of x.

- 6) If $\sin x = \frac{1}{6}$, find the value of $\sin 3x$.

Solution: we have, $\sin 3x = 3 \sin x - 4 \sin^3 x$

$$= 3\left(\frac{1}{6}\right) - 4\left(\frac{1}{6}\right)^3 = \frac{3}{6} - \frac{4}{216} = \frac{13}{27}$$

- 7) Show that : $\sqrt{2 + \sqrt{2 + \sqrt{2 + 2\cos 8x}}} = 2 \cos x$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Solution: L.H.S: } \sqrt{2 + \sqrt{2 + \sqrt{2 + 2\cos 8x}}} &= \sqrt{2 + \sqrt{2 + \sqrt{2(1 + \cos 8x)}}} \\ &= \sqrt{2 + \sqrt{2 + \sqrt{2 \times 2\cos^2 4x}}} = \sqrt{2 + \sqrt{2 + 2\cos 4x}} \\ &= \sqrt{2 + \sqrt{2 \times 2\cos^2 2x}} = \sqrt{2 + 2\cos 2x} \\ &= \sqrt{2(1 + \cos 2x)} = \sqrt{2 \times 2\cos^2 x} = 2\cos x = \text{R.H.S} \end{aligned}$$

- 8) If $\cot x = -\frac{5}{12}$, x lies in second quadrant, find the values of $\sec x$ and $\operatorname{cosec} x$.

Solution: Since, $\cot x = -\frac{5}{12} \Rightarrow \tan x = -\frac{12}{5}$

$$\text{Now, } 1 + \tan^2 x = \sec^2 x \Rightarrow \sec^2 x = 1 + \left(-\frac{12}{5}\right)^2 = 1 + \frac{144}{25} = \frac{169}{25}$$

$$\sec x = \pm \frac{13}{5} \Rightarrow \sec x = -\frac{13}{5}, \text{ because } x \text{ lies in second quadrant}$$

$$\text{Similarly, } \operatorname{cosec}^2 x = 1 + \frac{25}{144} = \frac{169}{144} \Rightarrow \operatorname{cosec} x = \pm \frac{13}{12}$$

$$\operatorname{cosec} x = \frac{13}{12}, \text{ as } x \text{ lies in second quadrant.}$$

- 9) A wheel makes 360 revolutions in one minute. Through how many radians does it turn in one second?

Solution:

Number of revolutions made in 60 seconds = 360

$$\therefore \text{Number of revolutions made in one second} = \frac{360}{60} = 6$$

when the wheel makes one revolution, it turns through 2π radian.

$$\therefore \text{Number radians turned by the wheel in one second} = 6 \times 2\pi = 12\pi \text{ radians}$$

- 10): Prove that : $\sin(45^\circ + A) \sin(45^\circ - A) = \frac{1}{2} \cos 2A$

Solution:

$$\text{We have, } \sin(A + B) \sin(A - B) = \sin^2 A - \sin^2 B$$

$$\Rightarrow \sin(45^\circ + A) \sin(45^\circ - A) = \sin^2 45^\circ - \sin^2 A$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} - \sin^2 A \Rightarrow \frac{1 - 2\sin^2 A}{2} = \frac{\cos 2A}{2}$$

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS

- 1) Prove that: $\cot x \cot 2x - \cot 2x \cot 3x - \cot 3x \cot x = 1$

Solution: We have $3x = x + 2x$

$$\cot 3x = \cot(x + 2x)$$

$$\cot 3x = \frac{\cot x \cot 2x - 1}{\cot x + \cot 2x}$$

$$\cot x \cot 3x + \cot 2x \cot 3x = \cot x \cot 2x - 1$$

$$\Rightarrow \cot x \cot 2x - \cot 2x \cot 3x - \cot 3x \cot x = 1$$

- 2) Prove that : $\sin(-420^\circ)(\cos 390^\circ) + \cos(-660^\circ)(\sin 330^\circ) = -1$

Solution:

$$\text{L.H.S : } \sin(-420^\circ)(\cos 390^\circ) + \cos(-660^\circ)(\sin 330^\circ)$$

$$= -\sin \frac{7\pi}{3} \cos \frac{13\pi}{6} + \cos \frac{11\pi}{3} \sin \frac{11\pi}{6}$$

$$= -\sin\left(2\pi + \frac{\pi}{3}\right) \cos\left(2\pi + \frac{\pi}{6}\right) + \cos\left(4\pi - \frac{\pi}{3}\right) \sin\left(2\pi - \frac{\pi}{6}\right)$$

$$= -\sin \frac{\pi}{3} \cos \frac{\pi}{6} - \cos \frac{\pi}{3} \sin \frac{\pi}{6}$$

$$= -\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{3} + \frac{\pi}{6}\right) = -\sin \frac{\pi}{2} = -1 = \text{R.H.S.}$$

- 3) Show that : $\tan 70^\circ = \tan 20^\circ + 2 \tan 50^\circ$

Solution: We have, $\tan(A - B) = \frac{\tan A - \tan B}{1 + \tan A \tan B}$

$$\Rightarrow \tan A - \tan B = \tan(A - B)(1 + \tan A \tan B)$$

Put $A = 70^\circ$ and $B = 20^\circ$, we get

$$\tan 70^\circ - \tan 20^\circ = \tan 50^\circ (1 + \tan 70^\circ \tan 20^\circ)$$

$$\Rightarrow \tan 70^\circ - \tan 20^\circ = \tan 50^\circ (1 + \tan 70^\circ \tan (90^\circ - 70^\circ))$$

$$\Rightarrow \tan 70^\circ - \tan 20^\circ = \tan 50^\circ (1 + \tan 70^\circ \cot 70^\circ)$$

$$\Rightarrow \tan 70^\circ - \tan 20^\circ = 2 \tan 50^\circ$$

- 4) What must be the radius of a circular running path, round which an athlete must run 5 times in order to describe 1760 metres?

Solution: Since, it is a circular path. So, $\theta = \frac{l}{r}$

During one rotation, angle is subtended at the centre $= 2\pi$

$$\therefore 2\pi = \frac{l}{r} \Rightarrow l = 2\pi r = \text{perimeter}$$

$$\Rightarrow 5 \times 2\pi r = 1760 \text{ m} \Rightarrow \pi r = 176 \text{ m}$$

$$\Rightarrow r = 176 \times \frac{7}{22} = 8 \times 7 \text{ m} = 56 \text{ m}$$

- 5) Prove that : $\frac{\sin A + \sin 2A}{1 + \cos A + \cos 2A} = \tan A$

Solution: L.H.S.

$$\frac{\sin A + \sin 2A}{1 + \cos A + \cos 2A} = \frac{\sin A + 2 \sin A \cos A}{1 + \cos A + 2 \cos^2 A - 1}$$

$$\frac{\sin A(1 + 2 \cos A)}{\cos A(1 + 2 \cos A)} = \frac{\sin A}{\cos A} = \tan A = \text{R.H.S.}$$

- 6) In any cyclic quadrilateral ABCD, prove that: $\cos A + \cos B + \cos C + \cos D = 0$

Solution: $A + C = \pi$ (Opposite angles of cyclic quadrilateral are supplementary).

$$A = \pi - C$$

$$\cos A = \cos (\pi - C)$$

$$\cos A = -\cos C$$

$$\cos A + \cos C = 0 \quad \text{-----(1)}$$

$$\text{Similarly, } \cos B + \cos D = 0 \quad \text{-----(2)}$$

By adding equation (1) and (2), we get

$$\cos A + \cos B + \cos C + \cos D = 0$$

- 7) If $3 \tan A \tan B = 1$, prove that $2 \cos (A + B) = \cos (A - B)$

Solution: We have

$$3 \tan A \tan B = 1 \Rightarrow \frac{3 \sin A \sin B}{\cos A \cos B} = 1$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{\cos A \cos B}{\sin A \sin B} = \frac{3}{1}$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{\cos A \cos B + \sin A \sin B}{\cos A \cos B - \sin A \sin B} = \frac{3 + 1}{3 - 1} \quad (\text{Applying componendo \& dividendo})$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{\cos(A - B)}{\cos(A + B)} = \frac{2}{1} \Rightarrow 2 \cos (A + B) = \cos (A - B)$$

- 8) If $\tan (\pi \cos x) = \cot (\pi \sin x)$, prove that $\cos \left(x - \frac{\pi}{4} \right) = \pm \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}$

Solution: we have

$$\tan (\pi \cos x) = \cot (\pi \sin x)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \Rightarrow \frac{\sin(\pi \cos x)}{\cos(\pi \cos x)} &= \frac{\cos(\pi \sin x)}{\sin(\pi \sin x)} \\ \Rightarrow \cos(\pi \cos x) \cos(\pi \sin x) - \sin(\pi \cos x) \sin(\pi \sin x) &= 0 \\ \Rightarrow \cos(\pi \cos x + \pi \sin x) &= 0 \\ \Rightarrow \pi \cos x + \pi \sin x &= \pm \frac{\pi}{2} \\ \Rightarrow \cos x + \sin x &= \pm \frac{1}{2} \Rightarrow \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \cos x + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \sin x = \pm \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \Rightarrow \cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right) &= \pm \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}} \end{aligned}$$

9) If α and β are acute angles such that $\tan \alpha = \frac{m}{m+1}$ and $\tan \beta = \frac{1}{2m+1}$, prove that

$$\alpha + \beta = \frac{\pi}{4}$$

Solution: we have,

$$\begin{aligned} \tan(\alpha + \beta) &= \frac{\tan \alpha + \tan \beta}{1 - \tan \alpha \tan \beta} \\ \Rightarrow \tan(\alpha + \beta) &= \frac{\frac{m}{m+1} + \frac{1}{2m+1}}{1 - \frac{m}{m+1} \times \frac{1}{2m+1}} \\ \Rightarrow \tan(\alpha + \beta) &= \frac{2m^2 + 2m + 1}{2m^2 + 2m + 1} = 1 \\ \Rightarrow \alpha + \beta &= \frac{\pi}{4} \end{aligned}$$

10) Show that : $\left(1 + \cos \frac{\pi}{8}\right) \left(1 + \cos \frac{3\pi}{8}\right) \left(1 + \cos \frac{5\pi}{8}\right) \left(1 + \cos \frac{7\pi}{8}\right) = \frac{1}{8}$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Solution: : L.H.S: } &\left(1 + \cos \frac{\pi}{8}\right) \left(1 + \cos \frac{3\pi}{8}\right) \left(1 + \cos \frac{5\pi}{8}\right) \left(1 + \cos \frac{7\pi}{8}\right) \\ &\left(1 + \cos \frac{\pi}{8}\right) \left(1 + \cos \frac{3\pi}{8}\right) \left(1 - \cos \frac{3\pi}{8}\right) \left(1 - \cos \frac{\pi}{8}\right) = \left(1 - \cos^2 \frac{\pi}{8}\right) \left(1 - \cos^2 \frac{3\pi}{8}\right) \\ &= \sin^2 \frac{\pi}{8} \sin^2 \frac{3\pi}{8} = \frac{1}{4} \left(1 - \cos \frac{\pi}{4}\right) \left(1 - \cos \frac{3\pi}{4}\right) = \frac{1}{4} \left(1 - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right) \left(1 + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right) \\ &= \frac{1}{4} \left(1 - \frac{1}{2}\right) = \frac{1}{4} \times \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{8} \end{aligned}$$

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS

1) If $\sin x = \frac{3}{5}$, where $0 < x < \frac{\pi}{2}$, find the values of $\sin 2x$, $\cos 2x$, $\tan 2x$ and $\sin 4x$

Solution : we have, $\sin x = \frac{3}{5}$, where $0 < x < \frac{\pi}{2}$,

$$\cos x = \sqrt{1 - \sin^2 x} \Rightarrow \cos x = \sqrt{1 - \frac{9}{25}} \Rightarrow \cos x = \frac{4}{5}$$

$$\therefore \tan x = \frac{\sin x}{\cos x} = \frac{3}{4}$$

Thus, we obtain

$$\sin 2x = 2 \sin x \cos x = 2 \times \frac{3}{5} \times \frac{4}{5} = \frac{24}{25}$$

$$\cos 2x = 1 - 2\sin^2 x = 1 - 2 \times \left(\frac{3}{5}\right)^2 = \frac{7}{25}$$

$$\tan 2x = \frac{\sin 2x}{\cos 2x} = \frac{24}{7}$$

$$\text{and, } \sin 4x = 2\sin 2x \cos 2x = 2 \times \frac{24}{25} \times \frac{7}{25} = \frac{336}{625}$$

2) Prove that : $\cos^2 x + \cos^2 \left(x + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) + \cos^2 \left(x - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) = \frac{3}{2}$

Solution : L.H.S. $\cos^2 x + \cos^2 \left(x + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) + \cos^2 \left(x - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \{ 2\cos^2 x + 2\cos^2 \left(x + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) + 2\cos^2 \left(x - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) \}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} [1 + \cos 2x + \{1 + \cos 2\left(x + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right)\} + 1 + \cos 2\left(x - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right)]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} [3 + \cos 2x + \{ \cos \left(2x + \frac{4\pi}{3}\right) + \cos \left(2x - \frac{4\pi}{3}\right) \}]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} [3 + \cos 2x + \{ 2\cos 2x \cos \frac{4\pi}{3} \}]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} [3 + \cos 2x + \{ 2\cos 2x \times (-\frac{1}{2}) \}] = \frac{1}{2} \{3 + \cos 2x - \cos 2x\} = \frac{3}{2}$$

3) If $\tan x = -\frac{4}{3}$, x lies in quadrant III, Find the values of $\sin \frac{x}{2}$, $\cos \frac{x}{2}$ and $\tan \frac{x}{2}$.

Solution: we have, $\tan x = -\frac{4}{3}$, $\pi < x < \frac{3\pi}{2}$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{\pi}{2} < \frac{x}{2} < \frac{3\pi}{4} \Rightarrow \frac{x}{2} \text{ lies in quadrant II}$$

$$\text{Now, } \cos x = \frac{-1}{\sqrt{1+\tan^2 x}} = \frac{-1}{\sqrt{1+\frac{16}{9}}} = -\frac{3}{5}$$

$$\sin \frac{x}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{1-\cos x}{2}} = \sqrt{\frac{1+\frac{3}{5}}{2}} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{5}}$$

$$\cos \frac{x}{2} = -\sqrt{\frac{1+\cos x}{2}} = -\sqrt{\frac{1-3/5}{2}} = \frac{-1}{\sqrt{5}}$$

$$\Rightarrow \tan \frac{x}{2} = -2$$

4) Find the value of $\tan 9^\circ - \tan 27^\circ - \tan 63^\circ + \tan 81^\circ$

Solution: We have

$$= \tan 9^\circ + \tan 81^\circ - \tan 27^\circ - \tan 63^\circ$$

$$= \tan 9^\circ + \tan (90^\circ - 9^\circ) - \tan 27^\circ - \tan (90^\circ - 27^\circ)$$

$$= \tan 9^\circ + \cot 9^\circ - (\tan 27^\circ + \cot 27^\circ)$$

$$\text{Also, } \tan 9^\circ + \cot 9^\circ = \frac{1}{\sin 9^\circ \cos 9^\circ} = \frac{2}{2\sin 9^\circ \cos 9^\circ} = \frac{2}{\sin 18^\circ}$$

$$\text{Similarly, } \tan 27^\circ + \cot 27^\circ = \frac{2}{\sin 54^\circ} = \frac{2}{\sin(90^\circ - 36^\circ)} = \frac{2}{\cos 36^\circ}$$

$$\therefore \tan 9^\circ + \cot 9^\circ - (\tan 27^\circ + \cot 27^\circ) = \frac{2}{\sin 18^\circ} - \frac{2}{\cos 36^\circ}$$

$$= \frac{2 \times 4}{\sqrt{5}-1} - \frac{2 \times 4}{\sqrt{5}+1} = 4$$

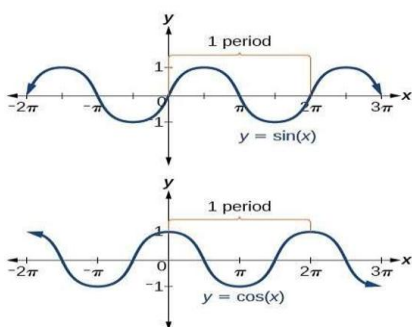
5) Prove that : $\cos \frac{\pi}{7} \cos \frac{2\pi}{7} \cos \frac{4\pi}{7} = -\frac{1}{8}$

Solution: L.H.S.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \cos \frac{\pi}{7} \cos \frac{2\pi}{7} \cos \frac{4\pi}{7} &= \frac{1}{2 \sin \frac{\pi}{7}} \left\{ 2 \sin \frac{\pi}{7} \cos \frac{\pi}{7} \cos \frac{2\pi}{7} \cos \frac{4\pi}{7} \right\} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2 \sin \frac{\pi}{7}} \left\{ \sin \frac{2\pi}{7} \cos \frac{2\pi}{7} \cos \frac{4\pi}{7} \right\} \\
 &= \frac{1}{4 \sin \frac{\pi}{7}} \left\{ 2 \sin \frac{2\pi}{7} \cos \frac{2\pi}{7} \cos \frac{4\pi}{7} \right\} = \frac{1}{4 \sin \frac{\pi}{7}} \left\{ \sin \frac{4\pi}{7} \cos \frac{4\pi}{7} \right\} \\
 &= \frac{1}{8 \sin \frac{\pi}{7}} \left\{ 2 \sin \frac{4\pi}{7} \cos \frac{4\pi}{7} \right\} = \frac{1}{8 \sin \frac{\pi}{7}} \left\{ \sin \frac{8\pi}{7} \right\} \\
 &= \frac{1}{8 \sin \frac{\pi}{7}} \left\{ \sin \left(\pi + \frac{\pi}{7} \right) \right\} = \frac{1}{8 \sin \frac{\pi}{7}} \left\{ -\sin \frac{\pi}{7} \right\} \\
 &= -\frac{1}{8} = \text{R.H.S}
 \end{aligned}$$

CASE STUDY BASED QUESTIONS

- 1) Sine and cosine functions can be used to model many real life scenarios-radio waves, tides, musical tones, electrical signals. Following are shown the graphs of sine and cosine curves. Looking to these graphs, answer the following questions



- (i) If we draw line $y = \frac{1}{2}$, at how many points the graph of sine and this line intersects between interval $[-\pi, \pi]$.
- (ii) At how many points the graph of cosine cuts on X axis between $(0, 2\pi)$?
- (iii) If both sine and cosine curve are drawn on the same graph and on the same interval $[-2\pi, 2\pi]$, then at how many points their graph will intersects ?

OR

At how many points will be $\sin x = \sqrt{2}$ in interval $[-\pi, \pi]$

Solution: (i) From the above graph. The line $y = \frac{1}{2}$ intersects the sine graph at **two** points.

Solution(ii) clearly from the graph, the graph of cosine cuts on X axis between $(0, 2\pi)$ at **two** points

Solution:(iii) If we will draw the graph of sine and cosine on the same interval $[-2\pi, 2\pi]$, then the graph of both function will intersect at **four** points.

OR

Solution: The value of $\sin x$ lies from -1 to 1 only, so $\sin x = \sqrt{2}$ is not possible in interval $[-\pi, \pi]$

- 2) Given $\cos x = -\frac{4}{5}$ and $\sin y = \frac{5}{13}$, x & y both lie in second quadrant.

Based on the following information's, answer the following: -

- (i) Find the value of $\sin(x - y)$.

(ii) Find the value of $\cos(x + y)$.

(iii) The value of $\tan(x + y) =$

OR

The value of $\cot(x - y) =$

Explanation: (i) $\sin(x - y) = \sin x \cos y - \cos x \sin y$

$$= \frac{3}{5} \times \left(-\frac{12}{13}\right) - \left(-\frac{4}{5}\right) \times \frac{5}{13} = -\frac{16}{65}$$

Explanation: (ii) $\cos(x + y) = \cos x \cos y - \sin x \sin y$

$$= \left(-\frac{4}{5}\right) \times \left(-\frac{12}{13}\right) - \frac{3}{5} \times \frac{5}{13} = \frac{33}{65}$$

Explanation: (iii) $\tan x = -3/4$, $\tan y = -5/12$

$$\therefore \tan(x + y) = \frac{\tan x + \tan y}{1 - \tan x \tan y} = \frac{-\frac{3}{4} - \frac{5}{12}}{1 - \left(-\frac{3}{4} \times -\frac{5}{12}\right)} = \frac{-56}{33}$$

OR

Solution: $\cot x = -\frac{4}{3}$ and $\cot y = -\frac{12}{5}$

$$\therefore \cot(x - y) = \frac{\cot x \cot y + 1}{\cot y - \cot x} = \frac{\frac{4}{3} \times \frac{12}{5} + 1}{-\frac{12}{5} + \frac{4}{3}} = \frac{63}{-16}$$

- 3) Trigonometry is the combination of 2 words – ‘Trigon’ means triangle and ‘metron’ means measure. It is a branch of geometry that studies relationship between lengths and angles of a triangle. Degree and radian units of measurement of angles are used, also called Indian system of measurement of triangles. In this system π radian = 180° ; $1^\circ = 60$ minute and 1 minute = 60 seconds; 1 right angle = 90° . The length of arc l is given by $l = r\theta$.

On the basis of above information answer the following questions:

(i) convert $\frac{11}{36}$ radians into degree minutes and seconds.

(ii) convert $\frac{7\pi}{18}$ into degree measure

(iii) Find the length of arc made by minute's hand of a clock in 5 minutes having radius 7 cm.

OR

If the arcs of the same length in two circles subtend angles 65° and 80° at the centre, then the ratio of their radii.

Solution: (i) $\frac{11}{36} \times \frac{180}{\pi}$ degree = $\frac{11 \times 5 \times 7}{22}$ degree = $\frac{35}{2}$ degree = $17^\circ 30'$

Solution: (ii) $\frac{7\pi}{18} \times \frac{180}{\pi}$ degree = 7×10 degree = 70°

Solution: (iii) Angle turns by minute hand in 1 minute = $\frac{360^\circ}{60} = 6^\circ$

$\therefore$ Angle turns by minute hand in 5 minutes = $5 \times 6^\circ = 30^\circ = \frac{\pi}{6}$ radian

$\therefore$ length of an arc made by minute hand in 5 minutes $l = r\theta = 7 \times \frac{\pi}{6} = \frac{7\pi}{6}$

OR

Solution: we have, $\theta_1 = 65^\circ = 65 \times \frac{\pi}{180} = \frac{13\pi}{36}$ & $\theta_2 = 80^\circ = 80 \times \frac{\pi}{180} = \frac{4\pi}{9}$

$$\therefore \text{ATQ, } r_1 \theta_1 = r_2 \theta_2 \Rightarrow \frac{r_1}{r_2} = \frac{\theta_2}{\theta_1} = \frac{4\pi}{9} \times \frac{36}{13\pi} \Rightarrow \frac{r_1}{r_2} = \frac{16}{13}$$

HIGHER ORDER THINKING SKILLS

1) If $\operatorname{cosec} x - \sin x = a^3$, $\sec x - \cos x = b^3$, then prove that $a^2 b^2 (a^2 + b^2) = 1$

Solution:

We have, $\operatorname{cosec} x - \sin x = a^3$, $\sec x - \cos x = b^3$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{1 - \sin^2 x}{\sin x} = a^3, \quad \frac{1 - \cos^2 x}{\cos x} = b^3$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{\cos^2 x}{\sin x} = a^3 \dots (i), \quad \frac{\sin^2 x}{\cos x} = b^3 \dots (ii)$$

On dividing equation (ii) by equation (i), we get

$$\Rightarrow \frac{\sin^2 x}{\cos x} \div \frac{\cos^2 x}{\sin x} = \frac{b^3}{a^3} \Rightarrow \tan^3 x = \frac{b^3}{a^3} \Rightarrow \tan x = \frac{b}{a}$$

$$\Rightarrow \sin x = \frac{b}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} \text{ and } \cos x = \frac{a}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}$$

Substituting the values of $\sin x$ and $\cos x$ in $\frac{\cos^2 x}{\sin x} = a^3$, we obtain

$$\frac{a^2}{b\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} = a^3 \Rightarrow ab\sqrt{a^2 + b^2} = 1$$

$$\Rightarrow a^2 b^2 (a^2 + b^2) = 1 \text{ Hence, proved}$$

2) If $\cot x (1 + \sin x) = 4m$ and $\cot x (1 - \sin x) = 4n$, prove that $(m^2 - n^2)^2 = mn$

Solution: we have,

$$\cot x (1 + \sin x) = 4m \text{ and } \cot x (1 - \sin x) = 4n$$

$$\Rightarrow \cot x + \cos x = 4m \text{ and } \cot x - \cos x = 4n$$

$$\Rightarrow (\cot x + \cos x)^2 - (\cot x - \cos x)^2 = 16m^2 - 16n^2$$

$$\text{and } (\cot x + \cos x)(\cot x - \cos x) = 16mn$$

$$\Rightarrow 4\cot x \cos x = 16(m^2 - n^2) \text{ and } \cot^2 x - \cos^2 x = 16mn$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{\cos^2 x}{\sin x} = 4(m^2 - n^2) \text{ and } \frac{\cos^4 x}{\sin^2 x} = 16mn$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{\cos^4 x}{\sin^2 x} = 16(m^2 - n^2)^2 \text{ and } \frac{\cos^4 x}{\sin^2 x} = 16mn \Rightarrow 16(m^2 - n^2)^2 = 16mn$$

$$\Rightarrow (m^2 - n^2)^2 = mn \text{ Hence, proved}$$

3) If $a = \sec x - \tan x$ and $b = \operatorname{cosec} x + \cot x$, then show that $ab + a - b + 1 = 0$

Solution: we have,

$$\text{If } a = \sec x - \tan x \text{ and } b = \operatorname{cosec} x + \cot x$$

$$\Rightarrow a = \frac{1 - \sin x}{\cos x} \text{ and } b = \frac{1 + \cos x}{\sin x}$$

$$\therefore ab + a - b + 1 = \frac{1 - \sin x}{\cos x} \times \frac{1 + \cos x}{\sin x} + \frac{1 - \sin x}{\cos x} - \frac{(1 + \cos x)}{\sin x} + 1$$

$$= \frac{1 - \sin x + \cos x - \sin x \cos x + \sin x - \sin^2 x - \cos x - \cos^2 x + \sin x \cos x}{\sin x \cos x}$$

$$= \frac{1 - (\sin^2 x + \cos^2 x)}{\sin x \cos x} = 0$$

CHAPTER 4

COMPLEX NUMBERS AND QUADRATIC EQUATIONS

Definitions and Formulae:

- A number of the form $z = a + ib$, where $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$, the set of real numbers, and $i = \sqrt{-1}$ (iota) is called a complex number.
- It is denoted by z , $z = a + ib$. “a” is called the real part of complex number z and “b” is called the imaginary part of complex number z .
- ❖ Two complex numbers are said to be equal i.e. $z_1 = z_2$.

$$a + ib = c + id \Rightarrow a = c \text{ and } b = d$$

- ❖ A complex number z is said to be purely real if $\text{Im}(z) = 0$ and is said to be purely imaginary if $\text{Re}(z) = 0$.

❖ Algebra of Complex Numbers:

- Addition of two complex numbers:

Let $z_1 = a + ib$ and $z_2 = c + id$ be any two complex numbers. Then the sum $z_1 + z_2$ is defined as follows: $z_1 + z_2 = (a + c) + i(b + d)$, which is again a complex number.

- Difference of two complex numbers:

Given any two complex numbers z_1 and z_2 , the difference $z_1 - z_2$ is defined as follows: $z_1 - z_2 = z_1 + (-z_2)$.

- Multiplication of two complex numbers: Let $z_1 = a + ib$ and $z_2 = c + id$ be any two complex numbers then, the product $z_1 z_2$ is defined as follows: $z_1 z_2 = (ac - bd) + i(ad + bc)$

- The multiplication of complex numbers possesses the following properties:

i) The existence of multiplicative inverse:

For every non-zero complex number $z = a + ib$ or $a + bi$ ($a \neq 0, b \neq 0$), we have the complex number $\frac{1}{z} = z^{-1} = \frac{a - ib}{a^2 + b^2}$, called the multiplicative inverse of z ,

$$\text{such that } z \cdot \frac{1}{z} = 1$$

ii) The distributive law for any three complex numbers z_1, z_2, z_3 ,

$$(a) \quad z_1 (z_2 + z_3) = z_1 z_2 + z_1 z_3$$

$$(b) \quad (z_1 + z_2) z_3 = z_1 z_3 + z_2 z_3$$

- Division of two complex numbers: Given any two complex numbers z_1 and z_2 , where $z_2 \neq 0$, the $\frac{z_1}{z_2} = z_1 \frac{1}{z_2}$.

- Modulus a Complex Number: Let $z = a + ib$ be a complex number. Then the modulus of z , is denoted by $|z|$, is defined to be the non-negative real number $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$,

- A complex number with modulus 1 is called uni-modular complex number

- Properties of Modulus:

If z, z_1, z_2 are three complex numbers then

i) $|z| = 0 \Rightarrow z = 0$ i.e., real part and imaginary part are zeroes.

ii) $|z| = |-z|$

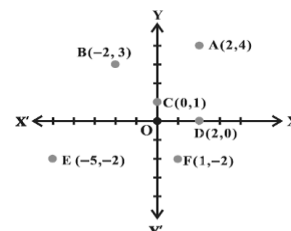
Conjugate of a Complex Number :

Let $z = a + ib$ then its conjugate is denoted by $\bar{z} = a - ib$

- Modulus using conjugate: $|z|^2 = z \cdot \bar{z}$

➤ Argand Plane :

Some complex numbers such as $2 + 4i$, $-2 + 3i$, $0 + 1i$, $2 + 0i$, $-5 - 2i$ and $1 - 2i$ which correspond to the ordered pairs $(2, 4)$, $(-2, 3)$, $(0, 1)$, $(2, 0)$, $(-5, -2)$, and $(1, -2)$, respectively, have been represented geometrically by the points A, B, C, D, E, and F, respectively.



The plane having a complex number assigned to each of its point is called the complex plane or the Argand plane.

➤ The square roots of a negative real number:

- $\sqrt{a} \times \sqrt{b} = \sqrt{ab}$ if both a and b are non negative
- $\sqrt{a} \times \sqrt{b} = -\sqrt{ab}$ if both are negative
- $\sqrt{a} \times \sqrt{b} = \sqrt{ab} i$ if one of them is negative

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS

1) Multiplicative inverse of complex number $(1+i)$ is

- A) $\frac{1}{2}(1 - i)$ B) $\frac{-1}{2}(1 - i)$ C) $\frac{1}{2}(1 + i)$ D) $\frac{1}{2}(-1 - i)$

Solution: Let $z = 1 + i$. Then the inverse is: $\frac{1}{1+i} = \frac{1-i}{(1+i)(1-i)} = \frac{1-i}{2} = \frac{1}{2}(1 - i)$

Answer: A

2) If $\left[\frac{(1-i)}{(1+i)}\right]^{100} = a + ib$, then (a, b) lie in

- A) 1st quadrant B) real axis C) imaginary axis D) origin

Solution: $\frac{1-i}{1+i} = \frac{(1-i)^2}{(1+i)(1-i)} = \frac{1-2i+i^2}{1-i^2} = \frac{1-2i-1}{1+1} = \frac{-2i}{2} = -i$

Then $(-i)^{100} = [(-i)^4]^{25} = 1^{25} = 1$, which lies on the real axis.

Answer: B

3) What is the conjugate of the complex number $z = 3 + 4i$

- A) $-3 + 4i$ B) $3 - 4i$ C) $-3 - 4i$ D) $4 + 3i$

Solution: Since the conjugate of the complex number $a + bi$ is $a - bi$

Answer: B

4) The value of $i^{29} + \frac{1}{i^{29}}$

- A) 1 B) 0 C) -1 D) I

Solution: $i^{29} + \frac{1}{i^{29}}$ Since $i^4 = 1$, $i^{29} = i^{(4 \cdot 7 + 1)} = i^1 = i$, $\frac{1}{i} = -i$
 $i + (-i) = 0$

Answer: B

5) $z_1 = 1 + 2i$ and $z_2 = 2 + 3i$. Then $z_1 z_2 =$

- A) $2 + 6i$ B) $3 + 2i$ C) $-4 + 7i$ D) $4 - 7i$

Solution: $(1 + 2i)(2 + 3i) = 1 \cdot 2 + 1 \cdot 3i + 2i \cdot 2 + 2i \cdot 3i$
 $= 2 + 3i + 4i + 6i^2 = 2 + 7i - 6 = -4 + 7i$

Answer: C

- 6) The value of $i^{19} + i^9$ is
 A) -1 B) 1 C) 0 D) 2

Solution: $i^{19} + i^9 = i^3 + i^1 = -i + i = 0$

Answer: C

- 7) The conjugate of $\frac{2-i}{(1-2i)^2}$ is
 A) $\frac{2+11i}{25}$ B) $\frac{2-11i}{25}$ C) $\frac{-2-11i}{25}$ D) $\frac{-2+11i}{25}$

Solution: Conjugate of $\frac{2-i}{(1-2i)^2}$

First compute conjugate of numerator and denominator separately:

Conjugate of numerator: $2 + i$

Conjugate of denominator: $(1 + 2i)^2 = (1 + 2i)^2$
 $= 1 + 4i + 4i^2 = 1 + 4i - 4 = -3 + 4i$

$\frac{2+i}{(-3+4i)} \Rightarrow$ Among options, that corresponds to $-\frac{-2-11i}{25}$

Answer: C

- 8) If $\left(\frac{1+i}{1-i}\right)^m = 1$, then find the least positive integral value of m.
 A) 1 B) 2 C) 3 D) 4

Solution: If $\left(\frac{1+i}{1-i}\right)^m = 1$, find least positive integer m

$\frac{1+i}{1-i} = \frac{(1+i)^2}{(1-i)(1+i)} = \frac{1+2i+i^2}{1+1} = \frac{1+2i-1}{2} = \frac{2i}{2} = i \Rightarrow i^m = 1$

$\Rightarrow m = 4$

Answer: D

- 9) The modulus of $\frac{1+i}{1-i} - \frac{1-i}{1+i}$ is
 A) 3 B) 2 C) 5 D) 1

Solution: First simplify both terms:

$\frac{1+i}{1-i} = i, \frac{1-i}{1+i} = -i \Rightarrow i - (-i) = 2i \Rightarrow |2i| = 2$

Answer: B

- 10) Let $z_1 = 2 - i$, $z_2 = -2 + i$ Find $\text{Re}\left(\frac{z_1 z_2}{\bar{z}_1}\right)$

A) $\frac{2}{5}$ B) $\frac{-2}{5}$ C) $\frac{2}{3}$ D) $\frac{-2}{3}$

Solution: First compute $z_1 z_2 = -(-2 + i)^2 = -4 + 4i - i^2 = -3 + 4i$

$\left(\frac{z_1 z_2}{\bar{z}_1}\right) = \frac{-3 + 4i}{2 + i} \cdot \frac{2 - i}{2 - i}$
 $= \frac{-2 + 11i}{5} \Rightarrow \text{Re} = \frac{-2}{5}$

Answer: B

ASSERTION - REASON BASED QUESTIONS

In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason(R).

Pick the correct option:

- A) Both Assertion (A) and Reason(R) are true and Reason(R) is the correct explanation of Assertion (A).

B) Both Assertion (A) and Reason(R) are true but Reason(R) is NOT the correct explanation of Assertion (A).

C) Assertion (A) is true but Reason(R) is false.

D) Assertion (A) is false but Reason(R) is true

- 1) Assertion (A): The real value of a for which $3i^3 - 2ai^2 + (1-a)i + 5$ is real is -2 .

Reason (R) : A complex number $z = x + iy$ is purely imaginary if $x \neq 0$ and $y = 0$.

Answer: C

Solution: $3i^3 - 2ai^2 + (1-a)i + 5 = -3i - 2a + (1-a)i + 5$ is real $\therefore$ coefficient of $i = 0 \therefore -3 + 1 - a = 0 \therefore a = -2$ which is true. Reason is false

- 2) Assertion (A): Conjugate of $2 + 3i$ lies in the fourth quadrant in complex plane.

Reason (R): $x + iy$ lies in the fourth quadrant in complex plane if $x < 0$ and $y > 0$.

Answer: C

Solution: Conjugate of $2 + 3i$ is $2 - 3i$ the corresponding point is $(2, -3)$ which is in fourth quadrant. A is true, clearly R is false

- 3) Assertion (A): The complex number $\frac{(1-i)^3}{1-i^3}$ is equal to -2 .

Reason (R): $i^n + i^{n+1} + i^{n+2} + i^{n+3} = 0 \forall n \in \mathbb{N}$.

Answer: C

Solution: $\frac{(1-i)^3}{1-i^3} = \frac{(1-i)^3}{1+i} \times \frac{1-i}{1-i} = \frac{(1-i)^4}{2}$
 $= \frac{(1+i^2-2i)^2}{2} = \frac{(-2i)^2}{2} = \frac{-4}{2} = -2$ A is true

R is also true but it is the not correct explanation of A.

- 4) Assertion (A): If $|z_1 + z_2|^2 = |z_1|^2 + |z_2|^2$ then $\frac{z_1}{z_2}$ is pure imaginary

Reason (R): if z is pure imaginary then $z + \bar{z} = 0$

Answer: A

Solution $|z_1 + z_2|^2 = (z_1 + z_2)(\bar{z}_1 + \bar{z}_2) = z_1\bar{z}_1 + z_1\bar{z}_2 + z_2\bar{z}_1 + z_2\bar{z}_2$
 $|z_1|^2 + |z_2|^2 + z_1\bar{z}_2 + z_2\bar{z}_1,$
 $= |z_1|^2 + |z_2|^2 \therefore z_1\bar{z}_2 + z_2\bar{z}_1 = 0$
 divide by $z_2\bar{z}_2$ then $\frac{z_1}{z_2} + \frac{\bar{z}_1}{\bar{z}_2} = 0 \Rightarrow \frac{z_1}{z_2}$ is pure imaginary

if z is pure imaginary then $\bar{z} = -z$ then $z + \bar{z} = 0$

, R is true and it is the correct explanation of A

- 5) Assertion (A) : if z_1, z_2 are two unimodular

$(|z_1| = |z_2| = 1)$ complex numbers then $|z_1 + z_2| = \left| \frac{1}{z_1} + \frac{1}{z_2} \right|$

Reason (R): if z is unimodular complex number then $\bar{z} = \frac{1}{z}$

Answer: A

Solution: z is unimodular the $|z| = 1 \Rightarrow z\bar{z} = 1 \Rightarrow \bar{z} = \frac{1}{z}$ R is True

Since z_1, z_2 are two unimodular, $\bar{z}_1 = \frac{1}{z_1}$ and $\bar{z}_2 = \frac{1}{z_2} \therefore$ A is also True and R is the correct explanation of A.

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS

- 1) Find the reciprocal of $3 - 4i$ in $x + iy$ form.

Solution: reciprocal of $x + iy$ is $\frac{x - iy}{x^2 + y^2}$

$$\text{reciprocal of } 3 - 4i \text{ is } \frac{3 + 4i}{25}$$

- 2) Show that the value of $1 + i^{10} + i^{20} + i^{30}$ is a real number

Solution: $1 + i^{10} + i^{20} + i^{30} = 1 + i^{10} + i^{18} \cdot i^2 + i^{28} \cdot i^2$ but $i^4 \text{ multiple} = 1$ and $i^2 = -1$
 $= 1 - 1 + 1 - 1 = 0$ which is a real number

- 3) For Complex numbers $z_1 = -1 + i$, $z_2 = 3 - 2i$ show that,

$$\text{Im}(z_1 z_2) = \text{Re}(z_1) \text{Im}(z_2) + \text{Im}(z_1) \text{Re}(z_2)$$

Solution: Compute $z_1 z_2$:

$$(-1 + i)(3 - 2i) = -3 + 2i + 3i - 2i^2 = -3 + 5i + 2 = -1 + 5i$$

$$\text{LHS: } \text{Im}(z_1 z_2) = 5$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{RHS: } \text{Re}(z_1) \text{Im}(z_2) + \text{Im}(z_1) \text{Re}(z_2) \\ = (-1)(-2) + 1(3) = 5 \end{aligned}$$

- 4) Find the conjugate of $(5 + \sqrt{2}i)^3$ in $a + ib$ form

Solution: (i) $(5 + \sqrt{2}i)^3$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Let } z = 5 + \sqrt{2}i, \text{ then } \bar{z}^3 = (\bar{z})^3 = (5 - \sqrt{2}i)^3 = 125 - 75\sqrt{2}i - 30 + 2\sqrt{2}i \\ = (125 - 30) - 73\sqrt{2}i = (95) - 73\sqrt{2}i \end{aligned}$$

- 5) Find the value $\left[\left(\frac{1}{3} + i\frac{7}{3}\right) + \left(4 + i\frac{1}{3}\right)\right] - \left(-\frac{4}{3} + i\right)$ in $a + ib$ form

$$\text{Solution: } = \left(\frac{1}{3} + 4 + \frac{4}{3}\right) + \left(\frac{7}{3} + \frac{1}{3} - 1\right)i = \frac{17}{3} + \frac{5}{3}i$$

- 6) Evaluate the following

$$\text{i) } \sqrt{36} \times \sqrt{-225} \qquad \text{ii) } \sqrt{-36} \times \sqrt{-225}$$

$$\text{Solution: i) } \sqrt{36} \times \sqrt{-225} = \sqrt{36}i^2 \times \sqrt{225} = 6i \times 15 = -90i$$

$$\text{ii) } \sqrt{-36} \times \sqrt{-225} = -\sqrt{36} \times \sqrt{225} = -90$$

- 7) If $(x - iy)(3 + 5i) = -6 + 24i$ then find the values of x and y

$$\text{Solution: } (x - iy)(3 + 5i) = 3x + 5ix - 3iy - 5yi^2 = (3x + 5y) + i(5x - 3y)$$

$$\text{Equating RP \& IP separately } 3x + 5y = -6 \text{ \& } 5x - 3y = 24$$

Solving the equations, we get $x = 3$ and $y = -3$

- 8) If n is any integer, then the value of $(1 - i)^n \left(1 - \frac{1}{i}\right)^n$

$$\text{Solution: We know that } \frac{1}{i} = -i$$

$$\text{Given expression becomes } (1 - i)^n (1 + i)^n = (1 - i^2)^n = 2^n$$

- 9) Find the non-zero integral solutions of the equation $|1 - i|^x = 2^x$

$$\text{Solution: } |1 - i|^x = 2^x \Rightarrow (\sqrt{2})^{x..} = 2^x \Rightarrow 2^{\frac{x}{2}} = 2^x \Rightarrow \frac{x}{2} = x \Rightarrow x = 0$$

$\therefore$ it has no non-zero solutions i.e. there are zero non-zero solutions are there.

10) Find the modulus of $\frac{1+i}{1-i} - \frac{1-i}{1+i}$

Solution: $\frac{1+i}{1-i} - \frac{1-i}{1+i} = \frac{(1+i)^2 - (1-i)^2}{2} = \frac{4i}{2} = 2i$

magnitude of $\frac{1+i}{1-i} - \frac{1-i}{1+i} = |2i| = 2$

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS

1) Reduce $\left(\frac{1}{1-4i} - \frac{2}{1+i}\right)\left(\frac{3-4i}{5+i}\right)$ to the standard form

Solution: Reduce: $\left(\frac{1}{1-4i} - \frac{2}{1+i}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{3-4i}{5+i}\right) = \left(\frac{1}{1-4i} \cdot \frac{1+4i}{1+4i} - \frac{2}{1+i} \cdot \frac{1-i}{1-i}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{3-4i}{5+i}\right) \cdot \frac{5-i}{5-i}$
 $= \left(\frac{1+4i}{17} - \frac{1-i}{1}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{11-23i}{26}\right) = \left(\frac{-16+21i}{17}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{11-23i}{26}\right) = \frac{307+599i}{442}$

2) If $z_1 = 2 - i$, $z_2 = 1 + i$, find $\left|\frac{z_1+z_2+1}{z_1-z_2+1}\right|$

Solution: Numerator: $z_1 + z_2 + 1 = (2 - i) + (1 + i) + 1 = 4$

Denominator: $z_1 - z_2 + 1 = (2 - i) - (1 + i) + 1$

$= (1 - 2i + 1) = 2 - 2i$

$\left|\frac{4}{2-2i}\right| = \left|\frac{4(2+2i)}{(2-2i)(2+2i)}\right| = \left|\frac{8+8i}{8}\right| = |1+i| = \sqrt{2}$

3) Evaluate $\left(i^{18} + \frac{1}{i^{25}}\right)^3$

$i^{18} = i^2 = -1, \quad \frac{1}{i^{25}} = \frac{1}{i} = -i$

Solution: $\therefore (-1 - i)^3 = (a + bi)^3 = a^3 + 3a^2bi + 3ab^2i^2 + b^3i^3$

$a = -1, b = -1 \Rightarrow (-1)^3 + 3(-1)^2(-1)i + 3(-1)(1)(-1) + (-1)^3(-i)$

$= -1 - 3i + 3 + i = 2 - 2i$

4) Find the conjugate of $\frac{(3-2i)(2+3i)}{(1+2i)(2-i)}$

Solution: Let's compute numerator and denominator:

Numerator: $(3 - 2i)(2 + 3i) = 6 + 9i - 4i - 6i^2 = 6 + 5i + 6 = 12 + 5i$

Denominator: $(1 + 2i)(2 - i) = 2 - i + 4i - 2i^2 = 2 + 3i + 2 = 4 + 3i$

Now the expression is $\frac{12+5i}{4+3i} = \frac{12+5i}{4+3i} \cdot \frac{4-3i}{4-3i} = \frac{(12+5i)(4-3i)}{25} = \frac{63-16i}{25}$

5) If $(a + ib)(c + id)(e + if)(g + ih) = A + iB$ then prove that $(a^2 + b^2)(c^2 + d^2)(e^2 + f^2)(g^2 + h^2) = A^2 + B^2$

Solution: $(a + ib)(c + id)(e + if)(g + ih) = A + iB$

$\Rightarrow |(a + ib)(c + id)(e + if)(g + ih)| = |A + iB|$

$\Rightarrow |(a + ib)| |(c + id)| |(e + if)| |(g + ih)| = |A + iB|$

$\Rightarrow \sqrt{a^2 + b^2} \sqrt{c^2 + d^2} \sqrt{e^2 + f^2} \sqrt{g^2 + h^2} = \sqrt{A^2 + B^2}$

squaring on both sides $\Rightarrow (a^2 + b^2)(c^2 + d^2)(e^2 + f^2)(g^2 + h^2) = A^2 + B^2$

6) If $(x + iy)^3 = u + iv$ then show that $\frac{u}{x} + \frac{v}{y} = 4(x^2 - y^2)$.

Solution:

$(x + iy)^3 = x^3 + 3x^2iy + 3x(iy)^2 + (iy)^3$

$= x^3 + 3x^2iy - 3xy^2 - iy^3$

$= (x^3 - 3xy^2) + i(3x^2y - y^3)$

Now compute $\frac{u}{x} + \frac{v}{y} = x^2 - 3y^2 + 3x^2 - y^2 = 4(x^2 - y^2)$

- 7) Find the real θ such that $\frac{3 + 2i \sin \theta}{1 - 2i \sin \theta}$ is purely real

Solution:

$$\text{Let } z = \frac{3 + 2i \sin \theta}{1 - 2i \sin \theta}$$

For z to be purely real, its imaginary part must be 0.

Multiply numerator and denominator by the conjugate of the denominator:

$$z = \frac{3 + 2i \sin \theta}{1 - 2i \sin \theta} \times \frac{1 + 2i \sin \theta}{1 + 2i \sin \theta} = \frac{3(1 + 2i \sin \theta) + 2i \sin \theta(1 + 2i \sin \theta)}{1 + 4 \sin^2 \theta}$$

$$= \frac{3 + 6i \sin \theta + 2i \sin \theta - 4 \sin^2 \theta}{1 + 4 \sin^2 \theta}$$

$$\frac{(3 - 4 \sin^2 \theta) + i(8 \sin \theta)}{1 + 4 \sin^2 \theta} \text{ is pure real,}$$

So, imaginary part of $z = 0 \Rightarrow 8 \sin \theta = 0 \Rightarrow \theta = n\pi$ where $n \in \mathbb{N}$

- 8) Evaluate $\sum_{n=1}^{13} (i^n + i^{n+1})$, where $n \in \mathbb{N}$

Solution:

$$\sum_{n=1}^{13} (i^n + i^{n+1}) = \sum_{n=1}^{13} i^n (1 + i) = (1 + i) \sum_{n=1}^{13} i^n = (1 + i)(i + i^2 + i^3 + i^4 + \dots + i^{13})$$

$$= (1 + i)([i + i^2 + i^3 + i^4] + [i^5 + \dots + i^8] + \dots + [i^{10} + \dots + i^{12} + i^{13}])$$

$$= (1 + i)(0 + 0 + \dots + 0 + i) = (1 + i)i = i + i^2 = i - 1 = -1 + i$$

LONGANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS

- 1) If α and β are different complex numbers with $|\beta| = 1$, then find $\left| \frac{\beta - \alpha}{1 - \bar{\alpha}\beta} \right|$

$$\text{Solution: } \left| \frac{\beta - \alpha}{1 - \bar{\alpha}\beta} \right| = \left| \frac{\beta - \alpha}{\beta \bar{\beta} - \bar{\alpha}\beta} \right| = \left| \frac{\beta - \alpha}{\beta(\bar{\beta} - \bar{\alpha})} \right| \quad \beta \bar{\beta} = 1$$

$$\left| \frac{\beta - \alpha}{\beta(\bar{\beta} - \bar{\alpha})} \right| = \frac{|\beta - \alpha|}{|\beta| |\bar{\beta} - \bar{\alpha}|} \quad |z_1 z_2| = |z_1| |z_2| \text{ and } \left| \frac{z_1}{z_2} \right| = \frac{|z_1|}{|z_2|}$$

$$\frac{|\beta - \alpha|}{|\beta| |\bar{\beta} - \bar{\alpha}|} \quad |\bar{z}| = |z|, \frac{1}{|\beta|} = 1$$

- 2) If $|a + ib| = 1$ then prove that $\frac{(1 + b + ia)}{(1 + b - ia)} = b + ia$

$$\text{Solution: } |a + ib| = 1 \Rightarrow a^2 + b^2 = 1$$

$$\text{LHS} = \frac{(1 + b + ia)}{(1 + b - ia)} = \frac{(1 + b + ia)}{(1 + b - ia)} \times \frac{(1 + b + ia)}{(1 + b + ia)} = \frac{(1 + b + ia)^2}{(1 + b)^2 + a^2} = \frac{(1 + b)^2 + 2(1 + b)ai - a^2}{1 + b^2 + 2b + a^2}$$

$$\text{but } a^2 + b^2 = 1$$

$$\frac{1 + b^2 + 2b + 2ai + 2bai - a^2}{1 + b^2 + 2b + a^2} = \frac{2b^2 + 2b + (1 + b)2ai}{2(1 + b)} = b + ia$$

- 3) If $z = x + iy$ and the real part of $\frac{\bar{z} + 2}{\bar{z} - 1}$ is 4, show that $x^2 + y^2 - 3x + 2 = 0$

$$\text{Solution: } \frac{\bar{z} + 2}{\bar{z} - 1} = \frac{x + 2 - iy}{x - 1 - iy} = \frac{x + 2 - iy}{x - 1 - iy} \times \frac{x - 1 + iy}{x - 1 + iy} = \frac{(x + 2)(x - 1) + y^2 + (x + 2) - (x - 1)iy}{(x - 1)^2 + y^2}$$

$$\text{But real part is } 4 \Rightarrow \frac{(x + 2)(x - 1) + y^2}{(x - 1)^2 + y^2} = 4 \Rightarrow x^2 + x - 2 + y^2 = 4x^2 + 4 - 8x + 4y^2$$

$$\Rightarrow 3x^2 + 3y^2 - 9x + 6 = 0 \Rightarrow x^2 + y^2 - 3x + 2 = 0$$

- 4) show that $\left| \frac{z-2}{z-3} \right| = 2$ represents a circle. Find its centre and radius'

Solution: put $z = x + iy$ where x and $y \in R$

$$\left| \frac{x + iy - 2}{x + iy - 3} \right| = 2 \Rightarrow \sqrt{\frac{(x-2)^2 + y^2}{(x-3)^2 + y^2}} = 2 \Rightarrow (x-2)^2 + y^2 = 4[(x-3)^2 + y^2]$$

$\Rightarrow x^2 + y^2 - \frac{20}{3}x + \frac{32}{3} = 0$ which represent a circle whose centre is $(-g, -f) =$

$\left(\frac{10}{3}, 0\right)$ and radius $= \sqrt{g^2 + f^2 - c} = \frac{2}{3}$ units

- 5) If $|z^2 - 1| = |z|^2 + 1$ then show that z lies on Y-axis

Solution: we have to show that z lies on Y axis i.e. z is pure imaginary

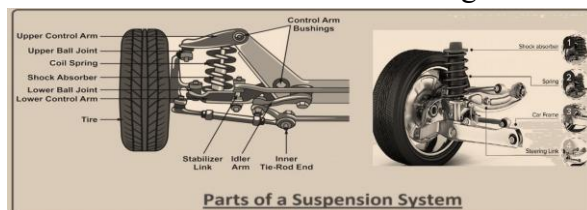
put $z = x + iy$ then $|(x + iy)^2 - 1| = |(x + iy)|^2 + 1$

$$\sqrt{(x^2 - y^2 - 1)^2 + (2xy)^2} = x^2 + y^2 + 1$$

$\Rightarrow -4x^2 = 0 \Rightarrow x = 0$ and $z = iy$ pure imaginary, $\therefore z$ lies on y axis.

CASE STUDY BASED QUESTIONS

- 1) During the study of oscillations in a new car model, an equation like $x^2 + 4 = 0$ arises. This equation has no real solution, making it impossible to proceed with real numbers alone. To handle such situations, engineers introduce complex numbers to find meaningful solutions and analyze system behavior. This need marks the motivation for introducing $\sqrt{-1}$ as a new number.



Based on the data answer the following questions.

- Find the roots of the quadratic equation $x^2 + 4 = 0$ and write the roots in the form $a + bi$.
- If the two solutions are denoted by z_1 and z_2 , verify $z_1 \cdot z_2$ and $z_1 + z_2$
- Find the conjugate and modulus of the roots.

OR

write the position of z_1 and z_2 in Argand plane.

Solution:

- (1) The equation $x^2 + 4 = 0$ gives $x^2 = -4$, so $x = \pm\sqrt{-4} = \pm 2i$.

- (2) Let $z_1 = 2i$ and $z_2 = -2i$.

$$\text{Then } z_1 \cdot z_2 = (2i)(-2i) = -4i^2 = -4(-1) = 4$$

$$\text{And } z_1 + z_2 = 2i - 2i = 0$$

- 3) Conjugate of $2i$ is $-2i$, and modulus of $2i$ is

$$|2i| = \sqrt{0^2 + 2^2} = 2$$

Conjugate of $-2i$ is $2i$, and modulus of $-2i$ is

$$|-2i| = \sqrt{0^2 + 2^2} = 2$$

OR

$z_1 = (0, 2)$ lies on positive imaginary axis

$z_2 = (0, -2)$ lies on negative imaginary axis

CHAPTER - 5: LINEAR INEQUALITIES

Gist of the lesson

- Introduction of linear inequalities
- Solutions of linear inequalities in one variable
- And their representation on the number line.

Definitions and Formulae:

- Definition 1: Two real numbers or two algebraic expressions related by the symbol ' $<$ ', ' $>$ ', ' $\leq$ ' or ' $\geq$ ' form an inequality.
- Definition 2: the inequality not containing any variable is numerical inequality.
- Definition 3: the inequality containing variables is literal inequalities
- Definition 4: The inequality contains the symbol ' $<$ ' or ' $>$ ' is called strict inequality.
- Definition 5: The inequality contains the symbol ' $\leq$ ' or ' $\geq$ ' is called slack inequality.
- Definition 6: solution of an inequality in one variable is a value of the variable which makes it a true statement.
- Definition 7: If the degree of an inequality is one then it is called Linear inequality
- Definition 8: If the degree of an inequality is two then it is called quadratic inequality

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS SOLVED

1. Which of the following is a solution of the inequality: $2x + 3 < 7$?

A) $x = 3$ B) $x = 2$ C) $x = 1$ D) $x = 4$

Answer : C

Solution: $2x + 3 < 7 \Rightarrow 2x < 7 - 3 \Rightarrow 2x < 4 \Rightarrow x < 2 \Rightarrow x = 1 < 2$

2. The solution set of the inequality $3x - 5 \geq 1$ is:

A) $x \geq 2$ B) $x \leq 2$ C) $x \geq 1$ D) $x \leq 1$

Answer : A

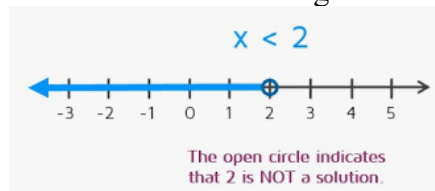
Solution: $3x - 5 \geq 1 \Rightarrow 3x \geq 6 \Rightarrow x \geq 2$

3. Which of the following is the correct representation of the solution of: $x < -2$ on the number line?

- A) A filled circle at -2 with an arrow to the right
B) An open circle at -2 with an arrow to the left
C) A filled circle at -2 with an arrow to the left
D) An open circle at -2 with an arrow to the right

Answer : B

Solution:



4. Solve the inequality: $-4x > 8$.

A) $x < -2$ B) $x > -2$ C) $x > 2$ D) $x < 2$

Answer : A

Solution: $-4x > 8$ divide by -4 both sides $\Rightarrow x < -2$ [when both sides are multiplied (or divided) by a negative number, then the inequality is reversed.]

5. What is the solution of the inequality: $5 - 2x \leq 9$?

A) $x \geq -2$

B) $x \leq -2$

C) $x \geq 2$

D) $x \leq 2$

Answer : B

Solution: $5 - 2x \leq 9 \Rightarrow -2x \leq 4$ divide by -2 both sides $\Rightarrow x \geq -2$

[when both sides are multiplied (or divided) by a negative number, then the inequality is reversed.]

6. Which one of the following represents a linear inequality in one variable?

A) $x^2 + 1 < 3$

B) $2x + 3 < 7$

C) $x + y > 2$

D) $x^3 < 5$

Answer : B

7. If the inequality $\frac{2x-5}{x+1} \leq 0$ holds, then the solution set is:

A) $x \leq -1$ or $x \geq 0$

B) $-1 < x \leq \frac{5}{2}$

C) $x \geq -1$ and $x \leq 3$

D) $x < -1$ or $x \geq 3$

Answer : B

Solution: if $\frac{p}{q} \leq 0$, then case I) $p \leq 0$ and $q > 0 \Rightarrow (2x - 5) \leq 0$ and $(x + 1) > 0 \Rightarrow x \leq \frac{5}{2}$ and $x > -1$

case II) $p \geq 0$ and $q < 0 \Rightarrow (2x - 5) \geq 0$ and $(x + 1) < 0 \Rightarrow x \geq \frac{5}{2}$ and $x < -1$ which is not possible

8. If the inequality $\frac{2x-5}{x+1} \leq 1$ holds, then the solution set is:

A) $x \in (-1, 6]$

B) $x \in (-1, 6)$

C) $x \in [-1, 6]$

D) $x \in [-1, 6)$

Answer : A

Solution: $\frac{2x-5}{x+1} \leq 1 \Rightarrow \frac{(2x-5)}{(x+1)} - 1 \leq 0 \Rightarrow$ on simplification $\frac{x-6}{x+1} \leq 0$

if $\frac{p}{q} \leq 0$, then case I) $p \leq 0$ and $q > 0 \Rightarrow x - 6 \leq 0$ and $(x + 1) > 0 \Rightarrow x \leq 6$ and

$$x > -1 \Rightarrow x \in (-1, 6]$$

case II) $p \geq 0$ and $q < 0 \Rightarrow x - 6 \geq 0$ and $(x + 1) < 0 \Rightarrow x \geq 6$ and $x < -1$ which is not possible

9. If $2x < 10$ and $x > 1$, what is the range of x ?

A) $1 < x < 5$

B) $x < 1$ or $x > 5$

C) $x > 10$

D) $x < 5$

Answer : A

10 Let $x \in \mathbb{R}$ be such that $3 < 2x + 1 < 7$. Then the solution set for x is:

A) $x \in (1, 3)$

B) $x \in (2, 4)$

C) $x \in (1, 2)$

D) $x \in (1, 4)$

Answer : A

Solution : $3 < 2x + 1 \Rightarrow 1 < x$ and $2x + 1 < 7 \Rightarrow x < 3 \Rightarrow 1 < x < 3$

ASSERTION - REASON BASED QUESTIONS SOLVED

1. Assertion (A) : If $a < b, c < 0$, then $\frac{a}{c} < \frac{b}{c}$.

Reason (R) : If both sides of the inequality are divided by the same negative number, then the inequality is reversed.

Answer: D

Solution: here R is True and A is not true If $a < b, c < 0$, then $\frac{a}{c} > \frac{b}{c}$

2. Assertion (A) : $|3x - 5| > 9 \Rightarrow x \in \left(-\infty, -\frac{4}{3}\right) \cup \left(\frac{14}{3}, \infty\right)$

Reason (R) : The region containing all the solutions of an inequality is called the solution region.

Answer : A

3. Assertion (A) : $|3x - 5| > 9 \Rightarrow x \in \left(-\infty, -\frac{4}{3}\right) \cup \left(\frac{14}{3}, \infty\right)$

Reason (R) : If $|x| > K$ then $x < -K$ and $x > K$

Answer: A

Solution: $|3x - 5| > 9 \Rightarrow -9 > 3x - 5$ and $3x - 5 > 9 \Rightarrow x < -\frac{4}{3}$ and $x < \frac{14}{3}$ A is true R

is

true and it is the correct explanation of A

4. Assertion (A) : If $|x - 2| < 5$, then $x \in (-3, 7)$.

Reason (R) : $|x - a| < r \Rightarrow a - r < x < a + r$

Answer: A

Solution: $|x - 2| < 5 \Rightarrow -5 < x - 2 < 5 \Rightarrow -3 < x < 7$ A is true

R is also true and correct explanation of A

5. Assertion (A) : If $\frac{x+3}{|x+3|} \geq 0$, then $x \in (-3, \infty)$.

Reason (R) : If $\frac{p}{q} \geq 0 \Rightarrow$ both p and q should have same sign

Answer: A

Solution: $\frac{x+3}{|x+3|} \geq 0 \Rightarrow$ both $x + 3$ and

$|x + 3|$ should have same sign but $|x + 3|$ is $> 0 \Rightarrow x + 3 \geq 0$

$\Rightarrow x \geq -3$ A is true

R is true and it is the correct explanation of A

6. Assertion (A) : If $11x - 9 \leq 68$, then $x \in (-\infty, 7)$.

Reason (R) : If both the sides of an inequation are either positive or negative, then on taking their reciprocals, the order of the inequation is reversed.

Answer: D

Solution.

We have. $11x - 9 \leq 68 \Rightarrow 11x \leq 77 \Rightarrow x \leq 7$

$\therefore x \in (-\infty, 7)$

So, Assertion (A) is false but Reason (R) is true.

$\therefore$ The answer is option (d).

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS SOLVED

1. Solve the inequality, $4x - 5 < x + 13$, when x is a natural number

Solution: $4x - 5 < x + 13$

$$\Rightarrow 3x < 18 \Rightarrow x < 6 \Rightarrow x = 1, 2, 3, 4, 5$$

2. Solve the inequality, $4x - 5 < x + 13$, when x is a whole number

Solution: $4x - 5 < x + 13 \Rightarrow 3x < 18 \Rightarrow x < 6 \Rightarrow x = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5$

3. Solve the inequality, $4x - 5 < x + 13$, when x is a real number

Solution: $4x - 5 < x + 13 \Rightarrow 3x < 18 \Rightarrow x < 6 \Rightarrow x \in (-\infty, 6)$

4. Solve the inequality $|x + 3| \leq 10$.

Solution: we know that $|x| \leq k \Rightarrow -K \leq X \leq K$

$$-10 \leq x + 3 \leq 10 \Rightarrow -13 \leq x \leq 7$$

5. Solve the inequality $|x + 3| \geq 10$.

Solution: we know that $|x| \geq k \Rightarrow x \geq k, x \leq -k$

$$x + 3 \geq 10, x + 3 \leq -10 \Rightarrow x \geq 7, x \leq -13$$

6. Solve $1 \leq |x - 2| \leq 3$

Solution: $1 \leq |x - 2| \Rightarrow x - 2 \geq 1, x - 2 \leq -1 \Rightarrow x \leq 1 \text{ or } x \geq 3$ --- -1

$$|x - 2| \leq 3 \Rightarrow -3 \leq x - 2 \leq 3 \Rightarrow -1 \leq x \leq 5$$

from 1 and 2 $x \in [-1, 1] \cup [3, 5]$

7. A solution is to be kept between 40°C and 45°C . What is the range of temperature in degree Fahrenheit, if the conversion formula is $F = \frac{9}{5}C + 32$?

Solution: let the temperature of the solution be $x^\circ\text{C}$ or $y^\circ\text{F} \Rightarrow y = \frac{9}{5}x + 32$

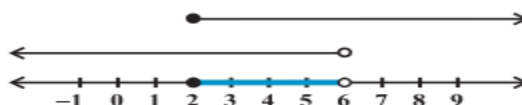
$$\text{given that } 40 < x < 45 \Rightarrow \frac{9}{5} \times 40 < \frac{9}{5} \times x < \frac{9}{5} \times 45 \text{ (multiplied by } \frac{9}{5} \text{ through out)}$$

$$\Rightarrow 72 < \frac{9}{5} \times x < 81 \Rightarrow 72 + 32 < \frac{9}{5} \times x + 32 < 81 + 32 \text{ (adding 32)}$$

$$\Rightarrow 104 < y < 114 \therefore \text{the range of temperature in degree Fahrenheit is } 104^\circ\text{F to } 114^\circ\text{F}$$

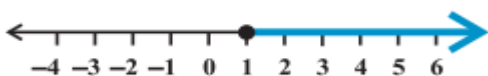
8. Represent $2 \leq x \leq 6$ on numberline.

Solution:



9. Represent $x \geq 1$ on numberline.

Solution:



10. Solve the inequality $|x - \frac{5}{2}| \leq \frac{31}{2}$

$$\text{Solution: } \left|x - \frac{5}{2}\right| \leq \frac{31}{2} \Rightarrow -\frac{31}{2} \leq x - \frac{5}{2} \leq \frac{31}{2}$$

Add $\frac{5}{2}$ to all parts

$$-\frac{31}{2} + \frac{5}{2} \leq x \leq \frac{31}{2} + \frac{5}{2}$$

$$-\frac{26}{2} \leq x \leq \frac{36}{2}$$

$$-13 \leq x \leq 18$$

Answer: $x \in [-13, 18]$

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS SOLVED

1. Ravi obtained 70 and 75 marks in first two-unit test. Find the minimum marks he should get in the third test to have an average of at least 60 marks.

Solution:

Let third test marks be x .

$$\frac{70+75+x}{3} \geq 60$$

$$145 + x \geq 180 \Rightarrow x \geq 35$$

Answer: Minimum marks = 35

2. To receive Grade 'A' in a course, one must obtain an average of 90 marks or more in five examinations (each of 100 marks). If Sunita's marks in first four examinations are 87, 92, 94 and 95, find minimum marks that Sunita must obtain in fifth examination to get grade 'A' in the course.

Solution: Let fifth test marks be x .

$$\frac{(87 + 92 + 94 + 95 + x)}{5} \geq 90$$

$$368 + x \geq 450 \Rightarrow x \geq 82$$

Answer: Minimum marks = 82

3. Find all pairs of consecutive odd positive integers both of which are smaller than 10 such that their sum is more than 11.

Solution: let the consecutive positive odd inters be $n, n+2$

by given condition 1 $n+2 < 10$ i.e. $n < 8$

by given condition 2: $n + n+2 > 11 \Rightarrow 2n > 9$ and $n > 4.5$ therefore $4.5 < n < 8$ and odd $n = 5, 7$, Pairs with sum > 11 : $(5,7), (7,9)$

4. Find all pairs of consecutive even positive integers, both of which are larger than 5 such that their sum is less than 23

Solution: let the consecutive positive odd inters be $n, n+2$

by given condition 1 $n > 5$ by given condition 2: $n + n+2 < 23 \Rightarrow 2n < 21$ and $n < 10.5$ therefore $5 < n < 10.5$ and even $n = 6, 8, 10$

Pairs with given conditions: $(6,8), (8,10), (10, 12)$.

5. The longest side of a triangle is 3 times the shortest side and the third side is 2 cm shorter than the longest side. If the perimeter of the triangle is at least 61 cm, find the minimum length of the shortest side.

Solution :

Sides: $x, 3x, 3x-2$

$$x + 3x + 3x - 2 \geq 61 \Rightarrow 7x - 2 \geq 61 \Rightarrow x \geq 9$$

Answer: Minimum shortest side = 9 cm

6. A man wants to cut three lengths from a single piece of board of length 91cm. The second length is to be 3cm longer than the shortest and the third length is to be twice as long as the shortest. What are the possible lengths of the shortest board if the third piece is to be at least 5 cm longer than the second?

Solution :

Sides: $x, x+3, 2x$

$$x + x+3 + 2x \leq 91 \Rightarrow 4x + 3 \leq 91 \Rightarrow x \leq 22$$

$$\text{Also, } 2x \geq x+3+5 \Rightarrow x \geq 8$$

$$\text{Answer: } 8 \leq x \leq 22$$

7. The longest side of a triangle is twice the shortest side and the third side is 2 cm longer than the shortest side. If the perimeter of the triangle is more than 166 cm, then find the minimum length of the shortest side.

Solution :

Let the length of shortest side be x cm .

According to the given information,

$$\text{Longest side} = 2 \times \text{shortest side} = 2x \text{ cm}$$

$$\text{and third side} = 2 + \text{shortest side} = (2 + x) \text{ cm}$$

$$\text{perimeter of triangle} = x + 2x + (x + 2) = 4x + 2$$

According to the question, perimeter > 166 cm

$$\Rightarrow 4x + 2 > 166 \Rightarrow 4x > 166 - 2 \Rightarrow 4x > 164$$

$$\Rightarrow x > \frac{164}{4}$$

$$= 41 \text{ cm}$$

$$8. \text{ Solve for } x: |x + 1| + |x| > 3$$

Solution :

$$\text{. LHS} = |x + 1| + |x|$$

As both the terms contain modulus by equating the expression within modulus to zero,

We get $x = -1, 0$ as critical points.

These critical points divide the line in three parts as $(-\infty, -1), [-1, 0), [0, \infty)$.

Case I: when $-\infty < x < -1$

$$|x + 1| + |x| > 3$$

$$\Rightarrow -x - 1 - x > 3 \Rightarrow -2x > 4 \Rightarrow x < -2$$

Case II: when $-1 \leq x < 0$

$$|x + 1| + |x| > 3$$

$$\Rightarrow x + 1 - x > 3 \Rightarrow 1 > 3 \text{ (not possible)}$$

Case III: when $0 \leq x < \infty$

$$|x + 1| + |x| > 3$$

$$\Rightarrow x + 1 + x > 3 \Rightarrow 2x > 2 \Rightarrow x > 1$$

Combining the results of cases, we get $x \in (-\infty, -2) \cup (1, \infty)$

9. Solve the system of inequalities:

$$5(2x - 7) - 3(2x + 3) \leq 0, \quad 2x + 19 \leq 6x + 47$$

Solution:

$$\text{We have } 5(2x - 7) - 3(2x + 3) \leq 0 \text{ and } 2x + 19 \leq 6x + 47$$

$$\Rightarrow 10x - 35 - 6x - 9 \leq 0 \text{ and } -4x \leq 28$$

$$\Rightarrow 4x - 44 \leq 0 \text{ and } x \geq -7$$

$$\Rightarrow 4x \leq 44 \text{ and } x \geq -7$$

$$\Rightarrow x \leq 11 \text{ and } x \geq -7 \Rightarrow x \in [-7, 11]$$

Hence, Solution set is $[-7, 11]$.

10. A plumber can be paid under two schemes as given below.

- Rs 600 and Rs 50 per hr.
- Rs 170 per hr.

If the job takes n hours for what values of n does the scheme I give the plumber the better wages?

solution : payment under 1st scheme $P_1 = 600 + 50n$

payment under 1st scheme $P_2 = 170n$

$$P_1 > P_2 \Rightarrow 600 + 50n > 170n \Rightarrow 120 < n < 600 \Rightarrow n < 5$$

no. of hours should be less than 5 hours for scheme 1 pavement to be better

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS SOLVED

1. Solve the in equation $|7x - 2| \leq 11$

Solution: We know: $|A| \leq B \Rightarrow -B \leq A \leq B$

$$-11 \leq 7x - 2 \leq 11 \Rightarrow -9 \leq 7x \leq 13 \Rightarrow -\frac{9}{7} \leq x \leq \frac{13}{7}$$

Answer: $x \in [-9/7, 13/7]$

2. Solve for real number x , $\frac{x}{4} < \frac{5x-2}{3} - \frac{7x-3}{5}$ and represent it on the number line.

Solution: Simplify RHS:

$$= \frac{(25x - 10 - 21x + 9)}{15} = \frac{(4x - 1)}{15}$$

Inequality becomes:

$$\frac{x}{4} < \frac{(4x - 1)}{15} \Rightarrow 15x < 16x - 4 \Rightarrow -x < -4 \Rightarrow x > 4$$

Answer: $x > 4$

3. A milk of 80% concentration is diluted at home by the seller by adding some water to it so that milk concentration is reduced between 65% to 87% If 640 liters of milk of 80% concentration is available, how much water has been added? Which value system the seller is lacking?

Solution : Let x be the litres of water added to 640 litres of 80% milk.

Milk content = 512 litres

$$\text{We want } 65\% \leq \frac{512}{640+x} \leq 87\% \Rightarrow 0.65 \leq \frac{512}{640+x} \leq 0.87$$

$$\text{Solve: Left: } 512 > 0.65(640 + x) \Rightarrow x < 147.69$$

$$\text{Right: } 512 < 0.87(640 + x) \Rightarrow x > -51.49$$

Since $x \geq 0$, final answer: $0 < x < 147.69$

Maximum water that can be added ≈ 147.69 litres

4. In drilling world's deepest hole it was found that the temperature T in degree Celsius, X km below the earth's surface was given by

$$T = 30 + 25(x - 3), 3 \leq x \leq 15.3 \text{ At what depth will the temperature be between } 155^\circ\text{C and } 205^\circ\text{C.}$$

Solution:

$$T = 30 + 25(x - 3), \text{ where } 3 \leq x \leq 15.3$$

$$\text{We want: } 155 \leq T \leq 205 \Rightarrow 155 \leq 30 + 25(x - 3) \leq 205$$

$$\Rightarrow 125 \leq 25(x - 3) \leq 175 \Rightarrow 5 \leq x - 3 \leq 7$$

$$\Rightarrow 8 \leq x \leq 10$$

Answer: Depth is between 8 km and 10 km

5. A solution of 9% acid is to be diluted by adding 3% acid solution to it. The resulting mixture is to be more than 5% but less than 7% acid. If there is 460 litres of the 9% solution, how many litres of 3% solution will have to be added?

Solution: Let x = litres of 3% acid solution added to 460 litres of 9% acid.

Acid content: $41.4 + 0.03x$

Total volume = $460 + x$

by given conditions $0.05 < \frac{(41.4 + 0.03x)}{(460 + x)} < 0.07$

Solve:

Left: $41.4 + 0.03x > 0.05(460 + x) \Rightarrow x < 920$

Right: $41.4 + 0.03x < 0.07(460 + x) \Rightarrow x > 230$

Answer: $x \in (230, 920)$

CASE STUDY BASED QUESTIONS SOLVED

1. Aditya's mother gave him Rs. 200 to buy some packets of rice and Maggie from the market. The cost of one packet of rice is Rs. 30 and that of one packet of Maggie is Rs. 20. Let x denote the number of packet of rice and y denote the number of packets of Maggie.



(a) Find the inequality that represents the given situation.

(b) If he buys 4 packets of rice and spends entire amount of Rs. 200, then find the maximum number of packets of Maggie that he can buy. (c) Solve the following inequality for real x : $4x + 3 < 5x + 7$ (2)

Ans. (a) Total amount = Rs. 200

Cost of one packet of rice = Rs. 30

And cost of one packet of Maggie = Rs. 20

Here, x and y denote the number of packets of rice and Maggie respectively, Total amount spent by Aditya is $30x + 20y$.

$\therefore$ Required inequality is $30x + 20y \leq 200$

(b) If he spends his entire amount, then

We have, $30x + 20y = 200$ (i)

Since, number of packet of rice = 4

$\therefore$ At $x = 4$, equation (i) becomes $30 \times 4 + 20y = 200$

$$\Rightarrow 120 + 20y = 200$$

$$\Rightarrow 20y = 200 - 120$$

$$\Rightarrow 20y = 80$$

$\therefore$ Maximum number of packets of Maggie that he can buy is 4.

(c) Given that, $4x + 3 < 5x + 7$ Now by subtracting 7 from both the sides, we get

$$4x + 3 - 7 < 5x + 7 - 7$$

The above inequality becomes, $4x - 4 < 5x$

Again, by subtracting $4x$ from both the sides,

$$4x - 4 - 4x < 5x - 4x$$

$$\Rightarrow x > -4$$

$\therefore$ The solutions of the given inequality are defined by all the real numbers greater than -4 .

The required solution set is $(-4, \infty)$.

2. An intelligence quotient (IQ) is a total score derived from a set of standardized tests or subtests designed to assess human intelligence. The abbreviation "IQ" was coined by the psychologist William Stern for the German term Intelligence quotient, his term for a scoring method for intelligence tests at University of Breslau he advocated in a 1912 book.



Manjula is a Psychology student and nowadays she is learning about Intelligence Quotient (IQ). She calculates the result as follows:

$$\text{Intelligence Quotient} = \frac{\text{Mental Age}}{\text{Chronological Age}} \times 100$$

(a) What could be the range of mental age if a group of children with chronological age of 15 years have the IQ range as $90 \leq \text{IQ} \leq 150$?

(b) What could be the range of IQ if a group of children with age of 12 years have the mental age range as $9 \leq \text{MA} \leq 15$?

OR

(b) What could be the range of IQ if a group of children with mental age of 18 years have the mental age range as $12 \leq \text{CA} \leq 15$?

$$\text{Ans. (a) } 90 \leq \text{IQ} \leq 150 \Rightarrow 90 \leq \frac{\text{MA}}{15} \times 100 \leq 150$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{90}{100} \leq \frac{\text{MA}}{15} \leq \frac{150}{100} \Rightarrow \frac{90}{100} \times 15 \leq \text{MA} \leq \frac{150}{100} \times 15$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{27}{2} \leq \text{MA} \leq \frac{45}{2} \Rightarrow 13.5 \leq \text{MA} \leq 22.5$$

$$\text{(b) } \text{IQ} = \frac{\text{MA}}{\text{CA}} \times 100 \Rightarrow \text{MA} = \frac{\text{IQ} \times \text{CA}}{100} \quad \text{As, } 9 \leq \text{MA} \leq 15$$

$$\Rightarrow 9 \leq \frac{\text{IQ} \times \text{CA}}{100} \leq 15 \Rightarrow 9 \leq \frac{\text{IQ} \times 12}{100} \leq 15 \Rightarrow 900 \leq \text{IQ} \times 12 \leq 1500$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{900}{12} \leq \text{IQ} \leq \frac{1500}{12} \Rightarrow 75 \leq \text{IQ} \leq 125$$

OR

$$\text{(b) } \text{IQ} = \frac{\text{MA}}{\text{CA}} \times 100 \Rightarrow \text{CA} = \frac{\text{MA}}{\text{IQ}} \times 100$$

As $12 \leq \text{CA} \leq 15$,

$$\Rightarrow 12 \leq \frac{\text{MA}}{\text{IQ}} \times 100 \leq 15$$

$$\Rightarrow 12 \leq \frac{18}{\text{IQ}} \times 100 \leq 15 \Rightarrow \frac{12}{100} \leq \frac{18}{\text{IQ}} \leq \frac{15}{100}$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{12}{1800} \leq \frac{1}{\text{IQ}} \leq \frac{15}{1800} \Rightarrow \frac{1800}{12} \geq \text{IQ} \geq \frac{1800}{15}$$

$$\Rightarrow 150 \geq IQ \geq 120$$

3. A beaker contains 600 litres of 12% solution of boric acid. This is to be diluted by adding 3% solution of boric acid to it. Based on this information answer the following questions.



1. If x litres of 2% boric acid solution is added to the beaker, find the quantity of acid in the resulting solution.
2. Find the initial quantity of water in the beaker.
3. How many litres of water will have to be added to the beaker that the resulting mixture will contain more than 5% but less than 8% acid content?

Solution: 1) $600 \times \frac{12}{100} + x \times \frac{3}{100} = 72 + \frac{3x}{100}$

2) $600 \times \frac{88}{100} = 528 \text{ lt}$

3) $5 < \left(\frac{600 \times \frac{12}{100} + x \times \frac{3}{100}}{600+x} \right) \times 100 < 8 \Rightarrow 5(600+x) < 7200+3x < 8(600+x)$

$$480 < x < 2100$$

CHAPTER – 6: PERMUTATIONS AND COMBINATIONS

Definitions And Formulae

Fundamental principles of counting:

Fundamental principle of multiplication –

- “If an event can occur in m different ways, following which another event can occur in n different ways, then the total number of occurrences of the events in the given order is $m \times n$.”
- If there are three different events such that one event occurs in m different ways, second event happens in n different ways and the third event occurs in p different ways, then all three Events simultaneously will happen in $m \times n \times p$ ways.
- **Fundamental principle of addition**–If there are two jobs such that first work can be performed independently in m number of ways and the second work independently can be done in n number of ways, then either of the two jobs can be performed in $(m + n)$ ways.

➤ **Factorial notation**

The notation $n!$ represents the product of first n natural numbers, i.e., the product $1 \times 2 \times 3 \times \dots \times (n - 1) \times n$ is denoted as $n!$.

We read this symbol as ‘ n factorial’.

Thus, $1 \times 2 \times 3 \times 4 \dots \times (n - 1) \times n = n!$

- $n! = n(n - 1)! = n(n - 1)(n - 2)! \quad [\text{provided } (n \geq 2)]$
 $= n(n - 1)(n - 2)(n - 3)! \quad [\text{provided } (n \geq 3)]$
- Permutation and combination are two fundamental concepts in mathematics that deal with the arrangement and selection of elements from a set.
- Permutation refers to the arrangement of elements in a specific order, while combination refers to the selection of elements without regard to order.

What is Permutation?

- permutation is an arrangement in a definite order of a number of objects taken some or all at a time.
- The number of permutations of n different objects taken r at a time, where $0 < r \leq n$ and the objects do not repeat is $n(n - 1)(n - 2) \dots (n - r + 1)$,
which is denoted by $P(n, r)$ OR ${}^n P_r = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!}, 0 \leq r \leq n$
 ${}^n P_0 = {}^n P_n = 1$
- The number of permutations of n different objects taken r at a time, where repetition is allowed, is n^r .
- **PERMUTATION OF A LIKE OBJECTS:** The number of permutations of n objects, where p_1 objects are of one kind, p_2 are of second kind, ..., p_k are of k^{th} kind and the rest, if any, are of different kind is $\frac{n!}{p_1! p_2! \dots p_k!}$
- The number of ways in which $(m + n)$ different things can be divided into two groups containing m and n things is $\frac{(m + n)!}{m! n!}$.
- The no. of permutations of n different objects taken r at a time:
 - ❖ when a particular object to be always included in each arrangement is ${}^{n-1} P_{r-1}$
 - ❖ when a particular object is never taken in each arrangement in ${}^{n-1} P_r$

Combinations – If we have to select combinations of items from a given set of items such that the order or arrangement doesn't matter, then we use combinations. Such that to find the number of ways of selecting r objects from a set of n objects, then mathematically it is given by ${}^nC_r = \frac{n!}{r!(n-r)!}$

- (i) $n_{C_0} = 1 = {}^nC_n$ (ii) $n_{C_1} = n = {}^nC_{n-1}$
- (iii) $n_{C_1} = n = {}^nC_{n-1}$ (iv) $n_{C_2} = \frac{n(n-1)}{2!} = n_{C_{n-2}}$
- (v) $n_{C_3} = \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)}{3!} = {}^nC_{n-3}$ (vi) $n_{C_r} = {}^nC_s \Rightarrow r + s = n \text{ or } r = s$
- (vii) ${}^nC_r + {}^nC_{r-1} = {}^{n+1}C_r$

• **RELATIONS BETWEEN nP_r & nC_r**

$${}^nP_r = {}^nC_r \cdot r!, \quad 0 \leq r \leq n$$

- ❖ The no. of arrangements of n distinct objects taken r at a time, so that k particular objects are
- Always included : ${}^{n-k}C_{r-k} \cdot r!$
- Never included : ${}^{n-k}C_r \cdot r!$
- ❖ ${}^nC_1 + {}^nC_2 + {}^nC_3 + {}^nC_4 + \dots + {}^nC_n = 2^n - 1$

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS SOLVED

- 1) *Teacher asked the student, suppose there are 10 boys and 8 girls in a class room, we want to select either a boy or a girl to represent the class in a function. In how many ways the selection can be made?*

- (a) 10 (b) 8 (c) 18 (d) 80

Ans: (c) 18 : We are selecting 1 person from 10 boys and 8 girls, and it can be either a boy or a girl. Since the teacher can select either a boy or a girl, we add the two results together, so Total ways to select: ${}^{10}C_1 + {}^8C_1 = 10 + 8 = 18$ different ways.

- 2) *Meera asked her friend Neeta that “if we have 4 flags of different colours, then how many different signals can be generated if a signal requires the use of 2 flags one below the other?”*

- (a) 4 (b) 3 (c) 2 (d) 12

Ans : (d) 12 We are selecting and arranging 2 flags out of 4, where order matters.

This is: ${}^4P_2 = 4 \times 3 = 12$. So, 12 different signals can be generated.

- 3) *In a class room discussion teacher ask the students, tell me about how many 3- digits even numbers can be formed from the digits 1,2,3,4,5,6 if no digit are repeated?*

- (a) 60 (b) 85 (c) 108 (d) 98

Ans: (a) 60, since the required three digits number is even so the unit place can be filled by (either 2 or 4 or 6 in 3 ways) and the digits are not repeated so by multiplication principle $= 4 \times 5 \times 3$

- 4) *In a class room discussion teacher asked the students, that how many 3- digits even numbers can be formed from the digits 1,2,3,4,5,6 if digit are repeated?*

- (a) 125 (b) 216 (c) 108 (d) 98

Ans : (c) 108, since the required three digits number is even so the unit place can be filled by (either 2 or 4 or 6 in 3 ways) and the digits are repeated so by multiplication principle $= 6 \times 6 \times 3 = 108$

- 5) *In how many ways can a party of 4 men and 4 women be seated at a circular table so that no two women are adjacent*

- a. 24 ways (b) 48 ways (c) 144 ways (d) 288 ways

Ans: 144 ways ,

The four men can be seated at the circular table such that there is a vacant seat between every pair of men, the no. of ways in which these four men can be seated at the table is $3!$ And the four vacant place may be occupied by 4 women is $4!$ Ways

$\therefore$ the required no. of ways = $3! \times 4! = 144$

- 6) *Sunita went to market with her friend Divya, on walking in the market Sunita see the Banner where it is written as 'LOGARITHMS'. Divya asked Sunita can you guess how many words with or without meaning can be formed out of the letters of the word 'LOGARITHMS'. If each letter is used once?*

- (a) $10!$ (b) $10!/2$ (c) $9!$ (d) $9!/2$

Ans: (a) $10!$

Since all letters are unique, the total number of distinct permutations is simply the factorial of the number of letters = $10!$

- 7) *Out of 7 consonants and 4 vowels, how many words of 3 consonants and 2 vowels can be formed?*

- (a) 2520 (b) 25200 (c) 252 (d) 25400

Ans: (b) 25200

Step 1: Choose 3 consonants from 7

The number of ways to select 3 consonants from 7 is given by the combination formula: $C(7,3) = \frac{7!}{3!4!}$
 $= 35$

Step 2: Choose 2 vowels from 4

Similarly, the number of ways to select 2 vowels from 4 is: $C(4,2) = \frac{4!}{2!2!} = 6$

Step 3: Arrange the selected 5 letters

Once we've selected 3 consonants and 2 vowels, we need to arrange these 5 letters. The number of ways to arrange 5 distinct letters is:

$$5! = 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 120$$

Step 4: Calculate the total number of distinct words

$$\text{Now, we multiply the results from each step: } {}^7C_3 \times {}^4C_2 \times 5! = 35 \times 6 \times 120 = 25,200$$

Therefore, 25,200 distinct words can be formed using 3 consonants and 2 vowels from a set of 7 consonants and 4 vowels, with each letter used exactly once.

- 8) *If ${}^{n+1}C_3 = 2 \cdot {}^nC_2$ then $n = ?$*

- (a) 3 (b) 4 (c) 5 (d) 6

Ans: (c) 5

- 9) *Among 14 players, 5 are bowlers. In how many ways a team of 11 may be formed with at least 4 bowlers?*

- (a) 265 (b) 263 (c) 264 (d) 275

Ans : (c) 264

We are given: Total players: 14 , Bowlers: 5, Non-bowlers: $14 - 5 = 9$

We need to form a team of 11 players with at least 4 bowlers

Let's break it down by cases:

Case 1: there should be 4 bowlers

Choose 4 bowlers from 5: ${}^5C_4 = \frac{5!}{4!1!} = 5$

Choose 7 non-bowlers from 9: ${}^9C_7 = 36$

Total no. of ways of selecting 4 bowlers = $5 \times 36 = 180$

Case 2: there should be 5 bowlers

Choose 5 bowlers from 5: ${}^5C_5 = 1$

Choose 6 non-bowlers from 9: ${}^9C_6 = 84$

Total no. of ways of selecting 5 bowlers = $1 \times 84 = 84$

Total number of ways: $180 + 84 = 264$

10) The number of arrangements of the letters of the word BHARAT taking 3 at a time is

- (a) 72 (b) 120 (c) 14 (d) None of these

Ans : (a) 72

The words can be formed out of the letters of the word 'BHARAT' taking 3 at a time can be done in 2 different cases :

Case - 1 : When all the letters are distinct. We have, 5 distinct letters, out of which taking three at a time, the number of words that can be formed = ${}^5P_3 = 60$

Case-2 : When 2 A's are selected.

So, we have, 2A's and 1 letter is to selected out of the 4 distinct letters, which can be done in ${}^4P_1 = 4$ ways.

Now, the 3 letters can be arranged among themselves, but there are 2 A's, so the number of ways in which arrangement can be done = $3! / 2! = 3$

So, in this case, total number of words that can be formed = $4 \times 3 = 12$.

The number of arrangements of the letters of the word BHARAT taking 3 at a time = $(60 + 12) = 72$ ways

ASSERTION - REASON BASED QUESTIONS SOLVED

Directions: Each of the following questions consists of two statements: an Assertion (A) and a Reason (R). Answer them by selecting the correct option:

- (a) Both Assertion (A) and Reason (R) are true, and Reason (R) is the correct explanation of Assertion (A).
(b) Both Assertion (A) and Reason (R) are true, but Reason (R) is not the correct explanation of Assertion (A).
(c) Assertion (A) is true, but Reason (R) is false.
(d) Assertion (A) is false, but Reason (R) is true.

1) Assertion (A): The number of ways to arrange the letters of the word "SCHOOL" is $\frac{6!}{2!}$

Reason (R): The number of permutations of n objects, where p_1 objects are of one kind, p_2 are of second kind, ..., p_k are of k^{th} kind and the rest, if any, are of different kind is $\frac{n!}{p_1!p_2!\dots p_k!}$.

Answer: (a) R explains A

2) Assertion (A): The number of 4-digit numbers formed using the digits 7, 5, 3, 4 without repetition is 4^4

Reason (R): Each of the 4 places can be filled by 4 digits.

Answer: (d) Without repetitions means $4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1$ or 4P_4

3) Assertion (A): ${}^nC_r = {}^nC_{n-r}$ for all $0 \leq r \leq n$.

Reason (R): Choosing r objects from n is the same as choosing $n-r$ objects to leave behind.

Answer: (a) R explains A

4) Assertion (A): The number of ways of choosing 3 students out of 10 for a group is 120.

Reason (R): In combinations, the order of selection does not matter.

Answer: (a) R explains A.

5) Assertion (A): The number of permutations of 5 items taken 3 at a time is equal to 5C_3 .

Reason (R): In permutations, the order of selection is not important.

Answer: (d) The number of permutations of 5 items taken 3 at a time is equal to 5P_3 so the assertion is false but the reason is true

6) Assertion (A): ${}_{12}C_2 = {}_{12}C_{10}$

Reason (R): Selection of the r distinct thing out of n is equal to the rejection of $(n-r)$ thing out of n .

Answer: (a) attributing to the reason, selection of 2 distinct things out of 12, is equal to rejection of $(12-2=10)$ things out of 12 so ${}_{12}C_2 = {}_{12}C_{10}$

7) Assertion (A): $3! + 4! = 7!$

Reason (R): For any positive integer n , $n! = 1 \times 2 \times 3 \times \dots \times n$ and $0! = 1$

Answer: d) Since (R) is the definition of factorial which is true but assertion is false.

As $3! + 4! = (3 \times 2 \times 1) + (4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1) = 6 + 24 = 30$

$7! = 7 \times 6 \times 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 > 30$

8) Assertion (A): -For any natural number n , ${}_nC_n = 1$

Reason (R): The number of ways of selecting r objects from a set of n objects, then mathematically it is given by ${}^nC_r = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!}$.

Answer: (c) since ${}_nC_r = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!r!}$ so ${}_nC_n = \frac{n!}{(n-n)!n!} = \frac{n!}{n!} = 1$

9) Assertion (A): ${}_nP_r = {}_nC_r \cdot r!$, $0 < r \leq n$

Reason (R): For each combination of ${}_nC_r$, there are $r!$ permutations.

Answer: (a) r objects in every combination can be arranged in $r!$ ways

${}_nP_r = {}_nC_r \cdot r!$, $0 < r \leq n$

10) Assertion (A): -The number of ways of choosing 4 cards from a pack of cards is ${}^{52}C_4$

Reason (R): Permutation is an arrangement in a definite order of a number of objects taken some or all at a time.

Answer: (b)

Solution: Selection of 4 card out of 52 can be made in ${}^{52}C_4$ ways. And (R) is the definition of permutation.

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPES QUESTIONS

1) Rashmita is playing with scrambles word cubes. She needs to form a word using all the letters of the word 'ORGANIC' without repetition of the letters.

(i) In how many ways vowels and consonants alternate between each other?

(ii) In how many words the all vowels are together?

Ans: (i) Vowels – O, A, I & consonants are R, G, N, C,

Number of words formed by the given condition = $4! \times 3! = 144$

(ii) No of words in which vowels are together = $5! \times 3! = 720$

2) Find the sum of the digits in the unit place of all the numbers formed with the help of 2,3,4,5 taken all at a time.

Ans: We are given the digits 2, 3, 4, 5, and we've to Use all digits at a time to form numbers (so all 4-digit numbers with no repetitions),

To find the sum of the digits in the unit place (i.e., last digit) across all such numbers.

Total no. of numbers using all 4 digits with no repetition = $4! = 24$

Since all digits are used equally and permutations are evenly distributed.

So each digit 2,3,4,5 will appear in the units place = $24/4 = 6$ times

Hence the Sum of digits in the unit place = $6 \times (2+3+4+5) = 6 \times 14 = 84$

3) Find the number of ways in which a team of eleven players can be selected from 22 players always including 2 of them and excluding 3 of them.

SOL: Total number of players = 22, We need to select 11 players

And We have to exclude 3, so 19 players are available.

Also from these 19 players 2 particular players are always included.

Therefore to select 9 players from remaining 17 players in ${}^{17}C_9$ ways

4) Find the number of words which can be formed out of the letters of the word ARTICLE, so that vowels occupy the even place.

SOL: Vowels are A, I, E and consonants are R, T, C, L.

Now vowels occupy three even places (2^{nd} , 4^{th} and 6^{th}) in ways.

In remaining four places four consonants can be arranged in $4!$ ways

so, total number of words = $3! \times 4! = 6 \times 24 = 144$ ways

5) How many different words can be formed by using all the letters of the word ALLAHABAD?

SOL: There are 9 letters in given word, of which 4 are A's & 2 are L's. So total number of words is the number of arrangements of 9 things of which 4 are similar of one kind, two are similar of one kind

$\therefore$ Total number of word = $\frac{9!}{4!2!}$ specific.

6) There are 10 points on a circle. How many chords can be drawn by using these points?

SOL: One chord can be drawn by using two points. So total number of chord = number of ways of choosing two points out of 10. i.e. ${}^{10}C_2$

7) Find the total number of five digit numbers that can be formed by using the digits 0,1,2,3, ...,9 if the digits can be repeated

SOL: Total number of five digit numbers $9 \times 10 \times 10 \times 10 \times 10 = 90000$

As 0 cannot be used as first place so it has 9 choices and rest all 4 places can be filled in 10 ways.

8) In an election, a voter may vote for any number of candidates, not greater than the number to be Elected, there are 8 candidates and 3 are to be elected. If a voter votes for at least one candidate, then find number of ways in which he can vote?

SOL: The number of ways in which a voter can vote is ${}^8C_1 + {}^8C_2 + {}^8C_3 = 8 + 28 + 56 = 92$

- 9) Find the total number of ways of answering 6 objective type question, each question having 4 choices:

SOL: -since each question can be answered in 4 ways ,So total number of ways of answering 6 question is $4 \times 4 \times 4 \times 4 \times 4 \times 4 = 4^6$

- 10) There are 3 candidates for a classical ,4 for a social science and 2 for a natural science scholarship In how many ways can these scholarships be awarded?

SOL: Since, classical scholarship can be awarded to any one of three candidates. So awarding the classical scholarship. Similarly, the social science and natural science scholarship can be awarded in 4 and 2 ways respectively. So number of ways $3 \times 4 \times 2 = 24$.

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS WITH SOLUTIONS

- 1) In India Pakistan world cup match. BCCI decided to choose 11 players from 14 eligible players in which 5 are bowlers, 4 are batsman. In how many ways a team of 11 may be formed with (a) at least 4 bowlers? (b) Exactly 4 batsmen? (c) 3 bowlers and 3 batsmen?

SOL: (a) Number of ways chosen at least 4 bowlers

Case I : 4 bowlers & 7 others = ${}^5C_4 \times {}^9C_7 = 180$ ways

Case II: 5 bowlers & 6 others = ${}^5C_5 \times {}^9C_6 = 84$ ways

Total number of ways = $180 + 84 = 264$ ways

(b) Exactly 4 batsmen?

Number of ways = ${}^4C_4 \times {}^{10}C_7 = 120$ ways

(c) 3 bowlers and 3 batsmen?

Number of ways = ${}^5C_3 \times {}^4C_3 \times {}^5C_5 = 40$ ways

- 2) In a school group consists of 4 girls and 7 boys. In how many ways can a team of 5 members be selected if the team has

(i) No girl? (ii) At least one boy and one girl? (iii) At least three girls?

SOL:

- (i) Number of ways = ${}^7C_5 = 21$ ways
(ii) Number of ways = ${}^4C_4 \times {}^7C_1 + {}^4C_3 \times {}^7C_2 + {}^4C_2 \times {}^7C_3 + {}^4C_1 \times {}^7C_4 = 441$ ways
(iii) Number of ways = ${}^4C_4 \times {}^7C_1 + {}^4C_3 \times {}^7C_2 = 91$ ways

- 3) From a college of 35 students, 15 students are to be chosen for an excursion party. Ravi, Shyam and Raju are best friends. They decided that either we three of them go or none of them go for excursion. In how many ways can the excursion party be chosen?

SOL: There are two cases

Case I: when three of them chosen for party

Rest students chosen by = ${}^{32}C_{12}$ ways

Case II : when three of them not chosen for party

Number of ways 15 students chosen = ${}^{32}C_{15}$ ways

Total Number of ways = ${}^{32}C_{12} + {}^{32}C_{15}$ ways

- 4) Find the number of different words that can be formed from the letters of the word INTERMEDIATE such that two vowels never come together.

SOL. Vowels in the word INTERMEDIATE are: (I, E, E, I, A, E) and

Consonants are: (N, T, R, M, D, T)

Now we have to arrange these letters if no two vowels come together.

So, first arrange six consonants in $\frac{6!}{2!}$ ways.

Arrangement of six consonants creates seven gaps.

Six vowels can be arranged in these gaps in $7C_6 \times \frac{6!}{2!3!}$ ways.

So, total number of words $\frac{6!}{2!} \times 7C_6 \times \frac{6!}{2!3!} = 360 \times 7 \times 60 = 151200$

- 5) *Four persons entered the lift cabin on the ground floor of 7 floor house suppose each of them can leave the cabin independently at any floor beginning with the first. What is the total number of ways in which each of the four persons can leave the cabin at any of the six floors?*

SOL: Suppose that A, B, C, D are 4 persons.

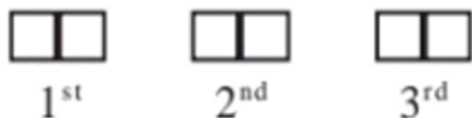
A can leave the cabin at any of the 6 floors. so, A can leave the cabin in 6 ways,

similarly, each of B, C and D can leave the cabin in 6 ways.

therefore, the total number of ways in which each of the 4 persons can leave the cabin at any of the six floors = $6 \times 6 \times 6 \times 6 = 1296$.

- 6) *Three married couples are to be seated in a row having six seats in a cinema hall. If spouses are to be seated next to each other, in how many ways can they be seated? Find also the number of ways of their seating if all the ladies sit together.*

Solution: Let us denote married couples by S_1, S_2, S_3 where each couple is considered to be a single unit as shown in the following figure:



Then the number of ways in which spouses can be seated next to each other is $3! = 6$ ways.

Again, each couple can be seated in $2!$ ways.

Thus, the total number of seating arrangement so that spouses sit next to each other = $3! \times 2! \times 2! \times 2! = 48$.

Again, if three ladies sit together, they can be arranged in $3!$ ways

And the ladies and 3 men can be arranged altogether among themselves in $4!$ ways. Therefore, the total number of ways where ladies sit together is $3! \times 4! = 144$.

- 7) *How many words, with or without meaning can be made from the letters of the word MONDAY, assuming that no letter is repeated, if (i) 4 letters are used at a time (ii) all letters are used at a time, (iii) all letters are used but first letter is a vowel?*

SOL: The total no. of letters in the word MONDAY = $6 = n$.

We know that the number of ways of selecting and arranging r different things from n different things is a permutation and we calculate it using the nP_r formula.

(i) Number of 4-letter words that can be formed from the letters of the word MONDAY, without repetition of letters = ${}^6P_4 = \frac{6!}{(6-4)!} = \frac{6!}{2!} = 360$.

(ii) Number of words that can be formed from the letters of the word MONDAY, if all letters are used at a time

$$= {}^6P_6 = 6! = 720.$$

(iii) Number of words that can be formed from the letters of the word MONDAY, if all letters are used but the first letter is a vowel $= 2 \times 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 240$

8) *A convex polygon has 44 diagonals. Find the number of its sides*

SOL: Let the number of sides of the polygon is n , so the polygon of n sides has ${}^nC_2 - n$

$$\text{Diagonals, so } {}^nC_2 - n = 44 \Rightarrow \frac{n(n-1)}{2} - n = 44 \Rightarrow n^2 - 3n - 88 = 0$$

$$(n-11)(n+8) = 0 \Rightarrow n = 11, -8 (\text{not possible}) \text{ So no. of sides equal to } 11$$

9) *A bag contains six white marbles and five red marbles. Find the number of ways in which four marbles can be drawn from the bag, if*

(i) *they can be of any colour*

(ii) *two must be white and two red and*

(iii) *they must all be of the same colour.*

SOL: Total number of marbles = 6 white + 5 red = 11 marbles

(i) If they can be of any colour means we have to select 4 marbles out of 11

$$\therefore \text{Required number of ways} = {}^{11}C_4$$

(b) Two white marbles can be selected in 6C_2

Two red marbles can be selected in 5C_2 ways.

$$\therefore \text{Total number of ways} = {}^6C_2 \times {}^5C_2 = 15 \times 10 = 150$$

(c) If they all must be of same colour,

Four white marbles out of 6 can be selected in 6C_4 ways. And 4 red marbles out of 5 can be selected in 5C_4 ways.

$$\therefore \text{Required number of ways} = {}^6C_4 + {}^5C_4 = 15 + 5 = 20$$

10) *A group consists of 4 girls and 7 boys. In how many ways can a team of 5 members be selected, if the team has*

(i) *no girls* (ii) *at least one boy and one girl* (iii) *at least three girls*

SOL : Number of girls = 4; Number of boys = 7

We have to select a team of 5 members provided that

(i). Team having no girls

$$\therefore \text{Required number of ways} = {}^7C_5 = \frac{7 \times 6}{2!} = 21$$

(ii) Team having at least one boy and one girl

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \text{Required number of ways} &= {}^7C_1 \times {}^4C_4 + {}^7C_2 \times {}^4C_3 + {}^7C_3 \times {}^4C_2 + {}^7C_4 \times {}^4C_1 \\ &= 7 \times 1 + 21 \times 4 + 35 \times 6 + 35 \times 4 = 7 + 84 + 210 + 140 \\ &= 441 \end{aligned}$$

(iii) Team having at least three girls

$$\therefore \text{Required number of ways} = {}^4C_3 \times {}^7C_2 + {}^4C_4 \times {}^7C_1 = 4 \times 21 + 7 = 84 + 7 = 91$$

LONG ANSWER TYPES QUESTIONS WITH SOLUTIONS

1. *What is the number of ways of choosing 4 cards from a pack of 52 playing cards? In how many of these are*

(i) four cards are of the same suit

(ii) all the four cards belongs to different suits

(iii) four cards are face cards

(iv) two are red cards and two are black cards

(v) cards are of the same colour

Solution: (i) There are four suits (diamond, spade, club and heart) of 13 cards each. Therefore, there are ${}^{13}C_4$ ways of choosing 4 diamond cards, ${}^{13}C_4$ ways of choosing 4 club cards, ${}^{13}C_4$ ways of choosing 4 spade cards and ${}^{13}C_4$ ways of choosing 4 heart cards.

$$\therefore \text{Required number of ways} = {}^{13}C_4 + {}^{13}C_4 + {}^{13}C_4 + {}^{13}C_4 = 4 \times {}^{13}C_4 = 4 \times \frac{13!}{9!4!} = 2860$$

(ii) Number of ways of selecting one card from each suit = ${}^{13}C_1 \times {}^{13}C_1 \times {}^{13}C_1 \times {}^{13}C_1 = 13^4$

(iii) There are 12 face cards out of which 4 cards can be chosen in ${}^{12}C_4$ ways.

$$\text{Required number of ways} = {}^{12}C_4 = 495 \text{ ways}$$

(iv) There are 26 red cards and 26 black cards. Therefore, 2 red cards can be chosen in ${}^{26}C_2$ ways and 2 black cards can be chosen in ${}^{26}C_2$ ways. Hence, 2 red and 2 black cards can be chosen in ${}^{26}C_2 \times {}^{26}C_2 = 105625$ ways.

(v) Out of 26 red cards, 4 red cards can be chosen in ${}^{26}C_4$ ways. Similarly, 4 black cards can be chosen in ${}^{26}C_4$ ways.

$$\text{Hence, 4 red or 4 black cards can be chosen in } {}^{26}C_4 + {}^{26}C_4 = 2 \times {}^{26}C_4 = 29900 \text{ ways}$$

2. Find the number of arrangements of the letters of the word INDEPENDENCE. In how many of these arrangements,

i) do the words start with P

ii) do all the vowels always occur together

iii) do all the vowels never occur together

iv) do the words begin with I and end in P?

SOL: To solve the problem of finding the number of arrangements of the letters in the word "INDEPENDENCE" and answering the specific questions, we will follow these steps:

The word "INDEPENDENCE" consists of 12 letters where:

N, D, E appears 3, 2, 4 times respectively where I, P, C appears 1 time

The formula for

the total arrangements of letters when there are repetitions is given by: $\text{Total arrangements} = \frac{n!}{p_1!p_2!\dots p_k!}$.

$$\text{Thus, we have: Total arrangements} = \frac{12!}{3!2!4!} = 1663200$$

(i) If the arrangement starts with P, we fix P in the first position.

The remaining letters are I, N, N, D, E, D, E, N, C, E (11 letters in total).

$$\text{The number of arrangements of these 11 letters is: } = \frac{11!}{3!2!4!} = 13860$$

(ii) The vowels in "INDEPENDENCE" are I, E, E, E, E. We can treat these vowels as a single entity or block. Thus, we have the block (IEEEE) and the consonants N, D, N, D, N, C (7 letters in total). Now we have 8 entities to arrange (the block and the consonants): so the Arrangements

$$= \frac{8!}{3!2!} = 3360$$

$$\text{Now, we need to arrange the vowels within the block: Vowel arrangements} = \frac{5!}{4!} = 5$$

$$\text{Thus, the total arrangements where all vowels are together is: } 3360 \times 5 = 16800$$

(iii) Arrangements where vowels never together =

$$\text{Total arrangements} - \text{Arrangements where vowels together} = 1663200 - 16800 = 1646400$$

(iv) If the arrangement starts with I and ends with P, we fix I at the start and P at the end. The remaining letters are N, N, D, E, D, E, N, C, E, E (10 letters in total).

$$\text{The number of arrangements of these 10 letters is: Arrangements} = \frac{10!}{3!2!4!} = 12600$$

3. There are 10 professors and 20 students out of whom a committee of 2 professors and 3 students is to be formed. Find the number of ways in which this can be done. Further find in how many of these committees:

(i) A particular professor is included (ii) A particular student is included

(iii) A Particular student is excluded

Solution: We are given: 10 professors $\rightarrow$ choose 2 and 20 students $\rightarrow$ choose 3

Ways to choose 2 professors & 3 students = ${}^{10}C_2 \times {}^{20}C_3 = 45 \times 1140 = 51300$

(i) A particular professor is included

Fix 1 specific professor. Now choose 1 more professor from the remaining 9, and

3 students from 20 which is = ${}^9C_1 \times {}^{20}C_3 = 9 \times 1140 = 10260$

(ii) A particular student is included

Fix 1 specific student. Now choose 2 more students from the remaining 19, and 2 professors from 10. Students: ${}^{19}C_2 \times {}^{10}C_2 = 171 \times 45 = 7695$

(iii) A particular student is excluded which means 1 specific student not to be selected. Now choose 3 students from the remaining 19, and 2 professors from 10 = ${}^{19}C_3 \times {}^{10}C_2 = 969 \times 45 = 43605$

4. Find the number of permutation of the letters of the word ALLAHABAD. In how many of these permutation

(i) All the vowels always occur together (ii) The vowels never occur together

SOL: We are given the word: ALLAHABAD.

The letters in the Word are : A L L A H A B A D (9 letters)

Total Repetitions: A appears 4 times, L appears 2 times, H, B, D appear once each

Total permutations of ALLAHABAD

When letters repeat, total permutations are given by:

Total permutations = $\frac{9!}{4!2!} = 7560$

(i) Vowels always occur together

Vowels: A, A, A, A, Consonants: L, L, H, B, D $\rightarrow$ 5 consonants

Treat the 4 A's (vowels) as one block. So now we have: 1 vowel block & 5 consonants

That's 6 items to permute: vowel-block and 5 consonants (L, L, H, B, D)

Ways to arrange 6 blocks = $\frac{6!}{2!} = \frac{720}{2} = 360$ (2! because L repeats twice)

Also, within the vowel block, we have 4 A's $\rightarrow$ only 1 way to arrange them (all same).

So total permutations with vowels together = $360 \times 1 = 360$

(ii) the no. of words in which Vowels never occur together

Total permutations – Permutations where vowels are together = $7560 - 360 = 7200$

5. In the word INSTITUTIONS, Find the number of arrangements of the letters of the word. In how many of these arrangements

(i) all vowels come together.

(ii) If no vowels come together (iii) All vowels come together and all consonant come together.

SOL: Total letters = 12 which has the letters : 3 I's ,2 N's ,2 S's ,3 T's, one U,one O

Vowels = I, U, O $\rightarrow$ Total vowels = 3 (I) + 1 (U) + 1 (O) = 5 vowels

Consonants = N, S, T $\rightarrow$ Total consonants = 12 - 5 = 7 consonants

Since some letters repeated, we divide by the factorials of the counts of repeated letters: So

$$\text{Total arrangements} = \frac{12!}{2!2!3!3!} = 3326400$$

(i) Treat all vowels (I, I, I, U, O) as a single block. and consonants: N, N, S, S, T, T, T are 7. So Total blocks to arrange = 8 blocks

$$\text{Step 1: Arrangement of 8 blocks (vowel block + consonants)} = \frac{8!}{2!2!3!} = 1680$$

$$\text{Step 2: Arrangements within the vowel block (I, I, I, U, O)} = \frac{5!}{3!} = 20$$

$$\text{Total arrangements if all vowels occur together} = 1680 \times 20 = 33600$$

(ii) Number of arrangements if no vowels come together

This is more complex. We'll use inclusion-exclusion:

$$\text{Total arrangements (from part i)} = 3326400$$

We subtract arrangements where **at least 2 vowels are together**

But here, we want the number where **no vowels are adjacent**.

Instead, it's easier to:

Step 1: Arrange consonants first (7 consonants)

Consonants = N (2), S (2), T (3)

$$\text{Consonant arrangements} = \frac{7!}{2!2!3!} = 210$$

Now, place vowels in the gaps between consonants so that no vowels are adjacent. There are 8 possible positions for vowels (i.e., between and around consonants): _ C _ C _ C _ C _ C _ C _ C

—

From these 8 gaps, choose 5 to place the 5 vowels. ${}^8C_5 = 56$

$$\text{Now arrange the vowels (I, I, I, U, O): } \frac{5!}{3!} = 20$$

$$\text{Total} = 210 \times 56 \times 20 = 235200$$

(iii) All vowels come together and all consonants come together

We treat vowels and consonants each as a block.

So we only arrange: [Vowel block][Consonant block] or

[Consonant block][Vowel block] $\rightarrow$ 2 ways

Step 1: Arrangement of vowels (I, I, I, U, O) = $\frac{5!}{3!} = 20$ & Arrangement of consonants

$$(N, N, S, S, T, T, T) = \frac{7!}{2!2!3!} = 210$$

Step 2: Multiply with 2 arrangements of blocks

Total no. of arrangements in which all vowels come together and all consonants come Together = $2 \times 20 \times 210 = 8400$

CASE BASED QUESTIONS WITH SOLUTION

1. Republic day is a national holiday of India. It honours the date on which the constitution of India came into effect on 26 January 1950 replacing the Government of India Act (1935) as the governing document of India and thus, turning the nation into a newly formed republic.

Answer the following question, which are based on the word "REPUBLIC"

- (i) Find the number of arrangements of the letters of the word 'REPUBLIC'?
- (ii) How many arrangements start with a vowel?
- (iii) If the number of arrangements of the letters of the word 'REPUBLIC' is $abcde$, then find the value of $(a + b + c + d + e)$

OR

- (iv) If the number of arrangements start with a vowel is $abcde$, then find the value of $(a + b) - (d + e)$

SOL: (i) The letters in the word 'REPUBLIC' are all distinct.

There are 8 letters in the given word. So, the number of arrangements are $8!$ i.e. 40320.

(ii) The vowels in a given word are 'E, I, U'. If we start a word from vowel, we can choose 1 vowel from 3 vowels in 3C_1 ways.

Further, remaining 7 letters can be arranged in $7!$ ways.

Total number of arrangements start with a vowel = ${}^3C_1 \times 7! = 3 \times 5040 = 15120$

(iii) Since the number of arrangements are 40320. On comparing, we get $a = 4$, $b = 0$, $c = 3$, $d = 2$ and $e = 0$ So, $a + b + c + d + e = 4 + 0 + 3 + 2 + 0 = 9$

OR

(iv) Since, number of arrangements is 15120 = $abcde$

On comparing, we get $a = 1$, $b = 5$, $c = 1$, $d = 2$ and $e = 0$

$$(a + b) - (d + e) = (1 + 5) - (2 + 0) = 6 - 2 = 4$$

2 :In an examination, a question paper consists of 12 questions divided into two parts i. e Part-I and Part-II, containing 5 and 7 questions, respectively. A student is required to attempt 8 questions in all.

Based on the above information answer the following

In how many ways can a student select the questions in such a way that there will be

- (i) 3 questions from part I and 5 questions from part II
- (ii) 4 questions from part I and 4 questions from part II
- (iii) 5 questions from part I and 3 questions from part II

OR

- (iv) In how many ways can a student select the questions if there **at least 3 questions from each part**

SOL: It is given that the question paper consists of 12 questions divided into two parts - Part I and Part II, containing 5 and 7 questions, respectively. A student has to attempt 8 questions, selecting at least 3 from each part.

This can be done as follows.

- i) 3 questions from part I and 5 questions from part II can be selected in ${}^5C_3 \times {}^7C_5$ ways.
- ii) 4 questions from part I and 4 questions from part II can be selected in ${}^5C_4 \times {}^7C_4$ ways
- iii) 5 questions from part I and 3 questions from part II can be selected in ${}^5C_5 \times {}^7C_3$ ways

OR

- (iv) Thus, required number of ways of selecting questions

$$\begin{aligned} &= {}^5C_3 \times {}^7C_5 + {}^5C_4 \times {}^7C_4 + {}^5C_5 \times {}^7C_3 \\ &= \frac{5!}{2!3!} \times \frac{7!}{2!5!} + \frac{5!}{4!1!} \times \frac{7!}{4!3!} + \frac{5!}{5!0!} \times \frac{7!}{3!4!} = 210 + 175 + 35 = 420 \end{aligned}$$

CHAPTER 7 – BINOMIAL THEOREM

DEFINITIONS AND FORMULAE

Binomial theorem for any positive integer n:

$$(a + b)^n = C(n, 0)a^n + C(n, 1)a^{n-1}b + C(n, 2)a^{n-2}b^2 + C(n, 3)a^{n-3}b^3 + \dots + C(n, n)b^n$$

Some important conclusions from the Binomial Theorem:

➤ $(x + a)^n = \sum_{r=0}^n C(n, r)x^{n-r}a^r$

Or $(x + a)^n = C(n, 0)x^n + C(n, 1)x^{n-1}a + C(n, 2)x^{n-2}a^2 + C(n, 3)x^{n-3}a^3 + \dots + C(n, n)a^n$

➤ The sum of indices of x and a in each term is n

➤ Since $C(n, r) = C(n, n - r)$, for $r = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots, n$

$$C(n, 0) = C(n, n); C(n, 1) = C(n, n - 1); C(n, 2) = C(n, n - 2); \dots$$

➤ Replacing a by $-a$

$$(x - a)^n = C(n, 0)x^n - C(n, 1)x^{n-1}a + C(n, 2)x^{n-2}a^2 - C(n, 3)x^{n-3}a^3 + \dots + (-1)^nC(n, n)a^n$$

$$\text{i.e. } (x - a)^n = \sum_{r=0}^n (-1)^r C(n, r)x^{n-r}a^r$$

➤ putting $x = 1$ and $a = x$ in the expansion, we get

$$(1 + x)^n = C(n, 0) + C(n, 1)x + C(n, 2)x^2 + C(n, 3)x^3 + \dots + C(n, n)x^n$$

$$(1 + x)^n = \sum_{r=0}^n C(n, r)x^r$$

➤ putting $x = 1$ and $a = -x$ in the expansion, we get

$$(1 - x)^n = C(n, 0) - C(n, 1)x + C(n, 2)x^2 - C(n, 3)x^3 + \dots + (-1)^nC(n, n)x^n$$

$$(1 - x)^n = \sum_{r=0}^n (-1)^r C(n, r)x^r$$

➤ the coefficient of $(r+1)^{\text{th}}$ term in the expansion of $(1 + x)^n$ is $C(n, r)$

➤ the coefficient of x^r in the expansion of $(1 + x)^n$ is $C(n, r)$

➤ if n is odd then $((x + a)^n + (x - a)^n)$ and $((x + a)^n - (x - a)^n)$ both have same number of terms equal to $\left(\frac{n+1}{2}\right)$

if n is even, then $((x + a)^n + (x - a)^n)$ has $\left(\frac{n}{2} + 1\right)$ terms and $((x + a)^n - (x - a)^n)$ has $\left(\frac{n}{2}\right)$ terms

❖ The number of terms in the expansion of $(x_1 + x_2 + \dots + x_k)^n$ is given by the formula ${}^{n+k-1}C_{k-1}$

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION SOLVED

1: Which of the following represents the binomial theorem for positive integral indices?

a) $(a + b)^n = a^n + b^n$

b) $(a + b)^n = \sum_{r=0}^n C(n, r)a^{n-r}b^r$

c) $(a + b)^n = a^{n+1} + b^{n+1}$

d) none of these

Answer: b (Statement of Binomial theorem)

2: Which of the following is the correct binomial coefficient?

a) $C(n, r) = \frac{n!}{r!(n-r)!}$

b) $(n, r) = \frac{(n-r)!!}{n!r!}$

c) $(n, r) = \frac{r!(n-r)!}{n!}$

d) $(n, r) = \frac{n!}{r!}$

Answer: a

$$\text{Since } C(n, r) = \frac{n!}{r!(n-r)!}$$

3: What is the value of $C(6, 2)$?

a) 10

b) 15

c) 20

d) 30

Answer: b .using $C(n, r) = \frac{n!}{r!(n-r)!}$

4: Which of the following corresponds to Pascal's triangles coefficients of the expansion $(a + b)^4$

- a) 1,3,3,1 b) 1,4,6,4,1 c) 1,5,10,10,5,1 d) 1,2,1

Answer: b ,

For n=4 The Coefficients are $C(4,0), C(4,1), C(4,2), C(4,3), C(4,4)$

5: The expansion $((x + a)^{51} + (x - a)^{51})$ has _____ terms after simplification.

- a) 50 b) 52 c) 26 d) none of these

Answer : c

Using properties if n is odd then $((x + a)^n + (x - a)^n)$ and $((x + a)^n - (x - a)^n)$ both have same number of terms equal to $\left(\frac{n+1}{2}\right)$

6: The total number of terms in the expansion $((x + a)^{100} + (x - a)^{100})$ after simplification is _____

- a)202 b) 51 c) 50 d) none of these

Answer: b

Using the properties if n is even, then $((x + a)^n + (x - a)^n)$ has $\left(\frac{n}{2} + 1\right)$ terms and

$((x + a)^n - (x - a)^n)$ has $\left(\frac{n}{2}\right)$ terms

7: Number of terms in the expansion $(1 - 2x + x^2)^7$ are _____

- a) 14 b) 15 c) 16 d) 17

Answer : b

$$(1 - 2x + x^2)^7 = ((1-x)^2)^7 = (1-x)^{14},$$

So the no. of terms =15

8. The coefficient of x^5 in $(x + 3)^9$ is _____

- a) $C(9,4)3^2$ b) $C(9,4)3^3$ c) $C(9,4)3^4$ d) none of these

Answer: c

The binomial expansion of

$$(x+3)^9 = x^9 + 27x^8 + 324x^7 + 2268x^6 + 10206x^5 + 30618x^4 + 61236x^3 + 78732x^2 + 59049x + 19683$$

9. $(1.2)^{10000}$ is _____ 1000

- (a) greater than (b) smaller than (c) equal to (d) none

Answer: a

$$\text{Let, } (1.1)^{10000} = (1+0.1)^{10000} = {}^{10000}C_0 + {}^{10000}C_1(1.1) + \text{other positive terms}$$

$$= 1 + 10000 \times 1.1 + \text{other positive terms} = 1 + 11000 + \text{other positive terms} > 1000$$

Hence, $(1.1)^{10000} > 1000$

10. The approximation of $(0.99)^5$ is

- (a) 0.951 b) 0.195 (c) 0.591 (d) 0.519

Answer: a

$$(0.99)^5 = (1 - 0.01)^5$$

$$= {}^5C_0(1)^5 - {}^5C_1(1)^4(0.01) + {}^5C_2(1)^3(0.01)^2$$

Here, we can calculate the binomial coefficients ${}^5C_0, {}^5C_1, \dots$ using the nCr formula.

$$= 1 - 5(0.01) + 10(0.0001) = 0.951$$

ASSERTION-REASON BASED QUESTIONS - SOLVED

In the following questions a statement of assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R). Choose the correct answer out of the following choices

- a). Both A and R are true and R is correct explanation of A.
- b). Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- c). A is true but R is false.
- d). A is false but R is true

1: Assertion(A) : The sum of the coefficients in the expansion $(x + y)^n$ is 2^n

Reason (R) : The binomial coefficients in the expansion of $(x + y)^n$ represent the elements in the nth row of Pascal's triangle.

Answer: (B)

2: Assertion (A): in the expansion $(x + y)^n$, the coefficient of $x^{n-k}y^k$ is given by $C(n, k)$

Reason(R) : The binomial coefficient $C(n, k)$ is equal to $\frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!}$

Answer: B

3: ASSERTION: The value of $\sum_{r=0}^n nC_r 5^r = 6^n$

REASON: The value of $\sum_{r=0}^n nC_r x^r = (1 + x)^n$

Answer: a

4: Assertion(A) : the number of terms in the expansion of $\{(3x + y)^8 - (3x - y)^8\}$ is 4

Reason (R) : if n is even, then $((x + a)^n - (x - a)^n)$ has $\left(\frac{n}{2}\right)$ terms

Answer: a

5: Assertion (A): The coefficient of the expansions of $(a + b)^n$ are arranged in an array. This array is called Pascal's triangle.

Reason (R) : There are 11 terms in the expansion $\{(3x + 4y)^{10} + (3x - 4y)^{10}\}$

Answer: b

6. ASSERTION: The total number of terms in expansion of $(x^5 + y^5)^5$ is 6.

REASON: The total number of terms in expansion of $(x + y)^n$ is $n+1$.

Answer: A

7 ASSERTIONS: If n is an odd prime, then integral part of $(5^{1/2} + 2)^n$ is divisible by $20n$.

REASON: If n is prime, then ${}^nC_1, {}^nC_2, {}^nC_3, \dots, {}^nC_{n-1}$ must be divisible by n.

Answer: a

8. ASSERTION: In the expansion of $(1 + x)^{30}$, greatest binomial coefficient is ${}^{30}C_{15}$

REASON: In the expansion of $(1 + x)^{30}$, the binomial coefficients of equidistant terms from end & beginning are equal.

Answer: b

9. Let n be a positive integer.

ASSERTION: $3^{2n+2} - 8n - 9$ is divisible by 64.

REASON: $3^{2n+2} - 8n - 9 = (1+8)^{n+1} - 8n - 9$ and in the binomial expansion of $(1+8)^{n+1}$, sum of first two terms is $8n + 9$ and after that each term is a multiple of 8^2 .

Answer: a

10. ASSERTION: The binomial theorem provides an expansion for the expression $(a + b)^n$.

where $a, b, n \in \mathbb{R}$.

REASON: All coefficients in a binomial expansion may be obtained by Pascal's triangle.

Answer: d

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS SOLVED

1: Expand $(2x - 3y)^4$ by Binomial theorem

Answer: using

$$(x - a)^n = C(n, 0)x^n C(n, 1)x^{n-1}a + C(n, 2)x^{n-2}a^2 - C(n, 3)x^{n-3}a^3 + \dots + (-1)^n C(n, n)a^n$$
$$= 16x^4 - 96x^3y + 216x^2y^2 - 216xy^3 + 81y^4$$

2: Expand $(x^2 + 2a)^5$ by Binomial theorem.

Answer: using

$$(x + a)^n = C(n, 0)x^n + C(n, 1)x^{n-1}a + C(n, 2)x^{n-2}a^2 + C(n, 3)x^{n-3}a^3 + \dots + C(n, n)a^n$$
$$= x^{10} + 10x^8a + 40x^6a^2 + 80x^4a^3 + 80x^2a^4 + 32a^5$$

3: Which is larger $(1.01)^{100000}$ or 10000

Answer: $(1.01)^{100000} = (1 + 0.01)^{100000}$

$$= C(100000, 0) + C(100000, 1)(0.01) + \text{other positive terms}$$

$$= 1 + 100000(0.01) + \text{other positive terms} = 1 + 10000 \text{ other positive terms}$$
$$> 10000$$

$$\text{So, } (1.01)^{100000} > 10000$$

4: Using binomial theorem prove that $6^n - 5n$ always leaves remainder 1 when divided by 25

$$\text{Answer: } 6^n = (1 + 5)^n = 1 + C(n, 1)5 + C(n, 2)5^2 + C(n, 3)5^3 + \dots + 5^n$$
$$= 1 + 5n + 5^2(C(n, 2) + C(n, 3)5 + \dots + 5^{n-2})$$

$$6^n - 5n - 1 = 25k \text{ (where } k = C(n, 2) + C(n, 3)5 + \dots + 5^{n-2})$$

Hence proved.

5. Expanding $\left(x - \frac{1}{x}\right)^6$, find the term which is independent of x expansion.

$$\text{Answer: } \left(x - \frac{1}{x}\right)^6 = x^6 - 6x^4 + 15x^2 - 20 + 15\frac{1}{x^2} - 6\frac{1}{x^4} + \frac{1}{x^6}$$

So, the term is -20

6. Find an approximation of $(0.99)^5$ using the first three terms of its expansion

Answer: 0.99 can be written as $0.99 = 1 - 0.01$

Now by applying the binomial theorem, we get

$$(0.99)^5 = (1 - 0.01)^5 = {}^5C_0(1)^5 - {}^5C_1(1)^4(0.01) + {}^5C_2(1)^3(0.01)^2$$

$$= 1 - 5(0.01) + 10(0.01)^2 = 1 - 0.05 + 0.001 = 0.951$$

7. Compute $(96)^4$ using binomial theorem

$$\text{Answer: } (96)^4 = (100 - 4)^4$$

$$= {}^4C_0 100^4 4^0 - {}^4C_1 100^3 4^1 + {}^4C_2 100^2 4^2 - {}^4C_3 100^1 4^3 + {}^4C_4 100^0 4^4$$

$$= 100000000 - 16000000 + 960000 - 25600 + 256$$

$$= 84934656$$

8. Using binomial theorem, find 11^5 .

$$\text{Answer: } (10 + 1)^5 = 10^5 + 5 \cdot 10^4 + 10 \cdot 10^3 + 10 \cdot 10^2 + 5 \cdot 10^1 + 1 = 161051$$

9. Prove that: $\sum_{k=0}^n C(n, k) 3^k = 4^n$

$$\text{Answer: } \sum_{r=0}^n C(n, r) 3^r = (1 + 3)^n$$

10. Evaluate: $(\sqrt{2} + 1)^5 + (\sqrt{2} - 1)^5$

Answer: Here, we can see $(x + y)^5 + (x - y)^5 = 2[{}^5C_0 x^5 + {}^5C_2 x^3 y^2 + {}^5C_4 xy^4]$
 $= 2(x^5 + 10x^3 y^2 + 5xy^4)$

Thus, $(\sqrt{2} + 1)^5 + (\sqrt{2} - 1)^5 = 2[(\sqrt{2})^5 + 10(\sqrt{2})^3(1)^2 + 5(\sqrt{2})(1)^4] = 58\sqrt{2}$

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS SOLVED

1. Find m such that the coefficient of x^2 in expansion of $\left(mx + \frac{m}{x}\right)^6$ is 960

Answer: $\left(mx + \frac{m}{x}\right)^6 = m^6 \left(x + \frac{1}{x}\right)^6$

Then, coefficient of x^2 is $m^6 \cdot 6C_2 \Rightarrow m^6 \cdot 6C_2 = 960$

$$m^6 = \frac{960}{15} = 64 \Rightarrow m = 2$$

2. Show that $9^{n+1} - 8n - 9$ is divisible by 64, whenever n is a positive integer

Answer: $(1 + a)^n = \sum_{r=0}^n {}^nC_r a^r$

putting $a=8$ and $m = n+1$ we get

$$(1+8)^{n+1} = {}^{n+1}C_0 + {}^{n+1}C_1(8) + {}^{n+1}C_2(8)^2 + \dots + {}^{n+1}C_{n+1}(8)^{n+1}$$

$$(9)^{n+1} = 9 + 8n + 64({}^{n+1}C_2 + \dots + {}^{n+1}C_{n+1}(8)^{n-1})$$

So, $9^{n+1} - 8n - 9 = 64k$ implies the expression is divisible by 64

3. If the expansion of $(1 - ax)^n = 1 - 21x + 189x^2 - 945x^3 + \dots$, then find a and n

Answer: $(1 - ax)^n = 1 - nax + \frac{n(n-1)}{2}a^2x^2 - \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)}{6}a^3x^3 \dots$

$$\text{Comparing } na = 21, \quad \frac{n(n-1)}{2}a^2 = 189$$

$$n(n-1)a^2 = 378$$

$$\text{Thus, } (n-1)a = 18$$

$$\text{Also } \frac{n}{n-1} = \frac{7}{6}$$

$$n = 7 \text{ and } a = 3$$

4. Find the coefficient of x^5 in binomial expansion of $(1 + 2x)^6(1 - x)^7$

Answer: Using binomial theorem we will expand both the terms.

We know that,

$$(x+y)^n = {}^nC_0x^n + {}^nC_1x^{n-1}y + {}^nC_2x^{n-2}y^2 + {}^nC_3x^{n-3}y^3 + \dots + {}^nC_r x^{n-r}y^r + \dots + {}^nC_n x^0y^n$$

Applying the formula we get $(1 + 2x)^6(1 - x)^7$

$$= (1 + {}^6C_1(2x) + {}^6C_2(2x)^2 + {}^6C_3(2x)^3 + {}^6C_4(2x)^4 + {}^6C_5(2x)^5 + {}^6C_6(2x)^6) \cdot$$

$$(1 - {}^7C_1x + {}^7C_2(x)^2 - {}^7C_3(x)^3 + {}^7C_4(x)^4 - {}^7C_5(x)^5 + {}^7C_6(x)^6 - {}^7C_7(x)^7)$$

$$= (1 + 12x + 60x^2 + 160x^3 + 240x^4 + 192x^5 + 64x^6) (1 - 7x + 21x^2 - 35x^3 + 35x^4 - 21x^5 + 7x^6 - x^7)$$

Clearly, it can determine that the coefficient of x^5 is

$$\Rightarrow 1 * (-21) + 12 * 35 + 60(-35) + 160 * 21 + 240 * (-7) + 192 * 1 = 171$$

Therefore, the coefficient of x^5 in $(1 + 2x)^6 \cdot (1 - x)^7$ is 171.

5. Find the last two digits of the number $(13)^{10}$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Sol: } (13)^{10} &= (169)^5 = (170 - 1)^5 \\ &= {}^5C_0 (170)^5 - {}^5C_1 (170)^4 + {}^5C_2 (170)^3 - {}^5C_3 (170)^2 + {}^5C_4 (170) - {}^5C_5 \\ &= {}^5C_0 (170)^5 - {}^5C_1 (170)^4 + {}^5C_2 (170)^3 - {}^5C_3 (170)^2 + 5(170) - 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{A multiple of } 100 + 5(170) - 1 = 100K + 849$$

$\therefore$ The last two digits are 49.

6. Show that $2^{3n} - 7n - 1$ is divisible by 49, where n is a positive integer.

$$\text{Answer: Given } 2^{3n} - 7n - 1 = 8^n - 7n - 1$$

$$\begin{aligned} &= (1+7)^n - 7n - 1 = {}^nC_0 + {}^nC_1 7 + {}^nC_2 7^2 + \dots + {}^nC_n 7^n - 7n - 1 \\ &= 1 + 7n + {}^nC_2 7^2 + \dots + {}^nC_n 7^n - 7n - 1 = {}^nC_2 7^2 + \dots + {}^nC_n 7^n \\ &= 49({}^nC_2 + \dots + {}^nC_n 7^{n-2}) \end{aligned}$$

Which is divisible by 49

7. If a and b are distinct integers, prove that $a^n - b^n$ is divisible by $a - b$ whenever $n \in \mathbb{N}$

$$\text{Answer: } a^n - b^n = \{(a - b) + b\}^n$$

$$a^n - b^n = (a - b) \left\{ (a - b)^{n-1} + {}^nC_1 (a - b)^{n-2} b + \dots + {}^nC_{n-1} b^{n-1} \right\}$$

Clearly RHS is divisible by $a - b$

8. Show that $2^{4n} - 15n - 1$ is divisible by 225.

$$\text{Ans: } 2^{4n} = (2^4)^n = (16)^n = (1 + 15)^n$$

$$\therefore 2^{4n} = 1 + {}^nC_1 15 + {}^nC_2 15^2 + \dots + {}^nC_n 15^n$$

$$\therefore 2^{4n} - 1 - 15n = 15^2 [{}^nC_2 + {}^nC_3 \cdot 15 + \dots + {}^nC_n 15^{n-2}] = 225 k.$$

Where k is an integer.

Hence $2^{4n} - 15n - 1$ is divisible by 225.

9. Find the number of terms in the expansion of the following: $(1 + 5\sqrt{2}x)^9 + (1 - 5\sqrt{2}x)^9$

$$\text{Answer: Number of terms} = (9 + 1) / 2 = 5$$

10. Prove that $12^n - 11n - 1$ is divisible by 121 For all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ by using binomial theorem

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Answer: } 12^n &= (1 + 11)^n = {}^nC_0 11^0 + {}^nC_1 11^1 + {}^nC_2 11^2 + \dots + {}^nC_{n-1} 11^{n-1} + {}^nC_n 11^n \\ &= 1 + n11 + {}^nC_2 11^2 + \dots + {}^nC_{n-1} 11^{n-1} + 11^n \end{aligned}$$

$$12^n - n11 - 1 = 11^2(n_{C_2} + n_{C_3}11 \dots + n_{C_{n-1}}11^{n-3} + 11^{n-2}), \text{ divisible by } 11^2 = 121.$$

LONG ANSWER TYPES QUESTIONS SOLVED

1. The sum of coefficients of the first three terms of the expansion of $\left(x - \frac{3}{x^2}\right)^m$ is 559, where m is a natural number. Find the number of terms in the expansion.

Answer: Here, coefficient of 1st three terms is $C(m, 0), -3C(m, 1), 9C(m, 2) + \dots$

According to the question, $C(m, 0) - 3C(m, 1) + 9C(m, 2) = 559$

$$1 - 3m + \frac{9m(m-1)}{2} = 559$$

On solving we get $m=12$. So, number of terms in the expansion are 13

2. If P be the sum of odd terms and Q that of even terms in the expansion $(a + b)^n$

Prove that

$$\text{i. } P^2 - Q^2 = (x^2 - a^2)^n$$

$$\text{ii. } 4PQ = (x + a)^{2n} - (x - a)^{2n}$$

$$\text{Answer: } (x + a)^n = C(n, 0)x^n + C(n, 1)x^{n-1}a + C(n, 2)x^{n-2}a^2 + C(n, 3)x^{n-3}a^3 + \dots + C(n, n)a^n$$

$$= t_1 + t_2 + t_3 + \dots + t_{n+1}$$

$$= (t_1 + t_3 + t_5 + \dots) + (t_2 + t_4 + t_6 + \dots)$$

$$(x + a)^n = P + Q \dots \dots \dots (i)$$

$$(x - a)^n = C(n, 0)x^n - C(n, 1)x^{n-1}a + C(n, 2)x^{n-2}a^2 - C(n, 3)x^{n-3}a^3 + \dots + (-1)^nC(n, n)a^n$$

$$= t_1 - t_2 + t_3 - t_4 + \dots = (t_1 + t_3 + t_5 + \dots) - (t_2 + t_4 + t_6 + \dots) \quad (x - a)^n = P - Q \dots \dots (ii)$$

Multiply (i) with (ii), we get $P^2 - Q^2 = (x^2 - a^2)^n$

by squaring (i) and (ii) and subtract, we get

$$4PQ = (x + a)^{2n} - (x - a)^{2n}$$

3. Find the remainder when $3^{3n} - 26n$ is divided by 676, where $n \in \mathbb{N}$

Solution: Using Binomial theorem:

$$(1 + x)^n = C(n, 0) + C(n, 1)x + C(n, 2)x^2 + C(n, 3)x^3 + \dots + C(n, n)x^n.$$

$$3^{3n} - 26n = 27^n - 26n$$

$$(1 + 26)^n = {}^nC_0 + {}^nC_1(26) + {}^nC_2(26)^2 + \dots + {}^nC_n(26)^n - 26n$$

$$= 1 + 26n + (26)^2 \{ {}^nC_2(26) + \dots + {}^nC_n(26)^{n-2} \} - 26n$$

$$3^{3n} - 26n = 1 + 676 \{ {}^nC_2(26) + \dots + {}^nC_n(26)^{n-2} \}$$

Therefore, when $3^{3n} - 26n$ is divided by 676, we get remainder is 1

4. Show that $2^{4n+4} - 15n - 16$, where $n \in \mathbb{N}$ is divisible by 225.

Answer: Use the binomial theorem to expand $2^{4n+4} = (2^4)^{n+1} = (16)^{n+1} = (1+15)^{n+1}$

Now $(1+15)^{n+1} - 15n - 16$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= {}^{n+1}C_0 + {}^{n+1}C_1 (15) + {}^{n+1}C_2 (15)^2 + \dots + {}^{n+1}C_{n+1} (15)^{n+1} - 15n - 16 \\
 &= 1 + 15(n+1) + (15)^2 \{ {}^{n+1}C_2 (15) + \dots + {}^{n+1}C_{n+1} (15)^{n-2} \} - 15n - 16 \\
 &= 225 \{ {}^{n+1}C_2 (15) + \dots + {}^{n+1}C_{n+1} (15)^{n-2} \} \text{ which is divisible by 225}
 \end{aligned}$$

CASE STUDY BASED QUESTIONS SOLVED

1. A bakery sells cookies in packs. Each pack contains either chocolates chips or oatmeal cookies. The owner wants to find out the different combinations of chocolate chip and oatmeal cookies in a pack of 5 cookies

- (i) How many different combinations of chocolate chip and oatmeal cookies can be made in a pack of 5 cookies?
- (ii) What is the probability of having exactly 3 chocolate chip cookies in a pack of 5 cookies?

Answer:

(i) The number of combinations corresponds to the coefficients in the expansion $(x + y)^5$, where x represents chocolate chips and y represents oatmeal cookies. The number of different combinations is given by the 5th row of Pascal's triangle 1, 5, 10, 10, 5, 1. Therefore there are 6 different combinations.

(ii) The coefficient of $x^3 y^2$ in the expansion $(x + y)^5$ gives the number of ways to have 3 chocolate chip and 2 oatmeal cookies. The coefficient $C(5, 3) = 10$.

The total number of combinations is $2^5 = 32$.

Therefore, the probability is $\frac{10}{32}$

2. Four friends applied the knowledge of Binomial Theorem while playing a game to make the equations by observing some conditions they make some equations.

- (a) Expand, $(1 - x + x^2)^4$
- (b) Expand the expression, $(1 - 3x)^7$.

OR

Show that $11^9 + 9^{11}$ is divisible by 10.

Ans. (a) We have, $(1 - x + x^2)^4 = [(1 - x) + x^2]^4$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= {}^4C_0 (1 - x)^4 + {}^4C_1 (1 - x)^3 (x^2) + {}^4C_2 (1 - x)^2 (x^2)^2 + {}^4C_3 (1 - x) (x^2)^3 + {}^4C_4 (x^2)^4 \\
 &= (1 - x)^4 + 4x^2 (1 - x)^3 + 6x^4 (1 - x)^2 + 4x^6 (1 - x) + 1 \cdot x^8 \\
 &= (1 - 4x + 6x^2 - 4x^3 + x^4) + 4x^2 (1 - 3x + 3x^2 - x^3) + 6x^4 (1 - 2x + x^2) + 4(1 - x)x^6 + x^8 \\
 &= 1 - 4x + 6x^2 - 4x^3 + x^4 + 4x^2 - 12x^3 + 12x^4 - 4x^5 + 6x^4 - 12x^5 + 6x^6 + 4x^6 - 4x^7 + x^8 \\
 &= 1 - 4x + 10x^2 - 16x^3 + 19x^4 - 16x^5 + 10x^6 - 4x^7 + x^8
 \end{aligned}$$

(b) Here, $a = 1$, $b = 3x$, and $n = 7$

Given, $(1 - 3x)^7 = {}^7C_0 (1)^7 - {}^7C_1 (1)^6 (3x)^1 + {}^7C_2 (1)^5 (3x)^2 - {}^7C_3 (1)^4 (3x)^3 + {}^7C_4 (1)^3 (3x)^4 - {}^7C_5 (1)^2 (3x)^5 + {}^7C_6 (1)^1 (3x)^6 - {}^7C_7 (1)^0 (3x)^7$

$$= 1 - 21x + 189x^2 - 945x^3 + 2835x^4 - 5103x^5 + 5103x^6 - 2187x^7.$$

OR

$$\begin{aligned}
 11^9 + 9^{11} &= (10 + 1)^9 + (10 - 1)^{11} = ({}^9C_0 \cdot 10^9 + {}^9C_1 \cdot 10^8 + \dots + {}^9C_9) + ({}^{11}C_0 \cdot 10^{11} - {}^{11}C_1 \cdot 10^{10} + \dots - {}^{11}C_{11}) \\
 &= {}^9C_0 \cdot 10^9 + {}^9C_1 \cdot 10^8 + \dots + {}^9C_8 \cdot 10 + 1 + 10^{11} - {}^{11}C_1 \cdot 10^{10} + \dots + {}^{11}C_{10} \cdot 10 - 1 \\
 &= 10[{}^9C_0 \cdot 10^8 + {}^9C_1 \cdot 10^7 + \dots + {}^9C_8 + {}^{11}C_0 \cdot 10^{10} - {}^{11}C_1 \cdot 10^9 + \dots + {}^{11}C_{10}] \\
 &= 10K, \text{ which is divisible by 10.}
 \end{aligned}$$

CHAPTER - 8: SEQUENCES AND SERIES

DEFINITIONS AND FORMULAE

Sequence: A sequence is a succession of numbers or functions arranged in a definite order. The elements of a sequence are called its **terms**.

Functional definition: A sequence is a special class of function whose domain is $\mathbb{N}$, the set of all natural numbers.

Finite Sequence: A sequence containing finite number of terms.

Use the functional notation $a(n)$ for a_n .

Series: $a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + a_4 + \dots$ is called the series associated with the sequence $a_1, a_2, a_3, a_4, \dots$

The series is finite or infinite according as the given sequence is finite or infinite.

$$a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + a_4 + \dots + a_n = \sum_{k=1}^n a_k.$$

Progression: A progression is a specific type of sequence where each term is obtained some rule or formula except first term.

Arithmetic Progression (A.P.): A sequence in which each term exceeds its previous term by a constant number except first term.

Arithmetic Mean (AM): Let a and b two numbers / terms. Insert a number (A) between a and b in such way that a, A, b are in A.P then A is called the Arithmetic Mean of a and b .

If A be the A.M. of a and b , then a, A and b will be in A.P. and $A = \frac{a+b}{2}$

In general,

$a_1, a_2, a_3, a_4, \dots, a_n$ are in A.P, then $a_2, a_3, a_4, \dots, a_{n-1}$ are $n - 2$ Arithmetic Means between a and a_n .

Note: Three terms are in A.P: $a - d, a, a + d$.

Five terms are in A.P : $a - 2d, a - d, a, a + d, a + 2d$

Geometric Progression (GP): A sequences in which

(i) each term is non-zero

(ii) each term is obtained by multiplying its previous term by a fixed non-zero constant except first term.

Let $a_1, a_2, a_3, a_4, \dots, a_n$ be a sequence.

(i) $a_k \neq 0, k = 1, 2, 3, 4, \dots, n$.

(ii) $a_k = r a_{k-1}, k = 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, \dots, n$.

Geometric Mean: When three numbers are in G.P. the middle term is the geometric mean of the other two. If G is the G.M. of a and b , then $G = \sqrt{ab}$

Formulae

(i) Sum to n terms of G.P. $S_n = \frac{a(r^n - 1)}{r - 1}, r \neq 1$

(ii) Sum to n terms of G.P. $S_n = na, r = 1$, where a is the first term.

Sum of infinite terms of G.P. $S_n = \frac{a}{1-r}$, provided $|r| < 1$.

Note: Three terms are in G.P: $\frac{a}{r}, a, ar$.

Five terms are in G.P : $\frac{a}{r^2}, \frac{a}{r}, a, ar, ar^2$.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS SOLVED

Q1. Every term of a G.P. is a positive and also every term is the sum of two preceding terms. Then the common ratio of the G.P. is

- (a) $\frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}$ (b) $\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$ (c) $\frac{-1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$ (d) 1

Ans: (b)

Solution: Let a be the first term and r be the common ratio of the G.P. Then, $a > 0$ and $r > 0$.

Now, $a_n = a_{n-1} + a_{n-2}$, $n > 2$.

$$ar^{n-1} = ar^{n-2} + ar^{n-3} \Rightarrow r^2 = r + 1$$

$$r^2 - r - 1 = 0 \Rightarrow r = \frac{1 \pm \sqrt{5}}{2} \Rightarrow r = \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2} \quad [r > 0]$$

Q2. For the sequence a_n general term is $a_n = \frac{(n-1)(n-2)}{(n+5)}$, then its term at places greater than 2 are all

- (a) positive (b) zeroes (c) natural numbers (d) negative

Ans: (a)

Solution: As $n - 1 > 0$ and $n - 2 > 0$ for $n > 2$

Q3. Third term of the sequence a_n whose n^{th} term is $a_n = \frac{n+\frac{1}{2}}{n}$ is

- (a) 3 (b) $\frac{5}{4}$ (c) $\frac{9}{8}$ (d) $\frac{7}{6}$

Ans: (d)

Solution: $a_3 = a_3 = \frac{3+\frac{1}{2}}{3} = \frac{7}{6}$.

Q4. Four arithmetic means inserted between two given numbers, then third arithmetic mean is at

- (a) 2nd place (b) 3rd place (c) 4th place (d) 5th place

Ans: (c)

Solution: Suppose a and b are two given numbers, then 4 A.M. between them are a, A_1, A_2, A_3, A_4, b . A_3 is at 4th place

Q5. If Arithmetic Means between a and b , p and q are equal then

- (a) $ab = pq$ (b) $aq = bp$ (c) $a+p = b+q$ (d) $a-q = p-b$

Solution: (d) $\frac{a+b}{2} = \frac{p+q}{2}$

Q6. If $x, 2y, 3z$ are in A.P., where the distinct numbers x, y, z are in G.P., then common ratio of the G.P. is

- (a) 3 (b) $\frac{1}{3}$ (c) 2 (d) $\frac{1}{2}$

Ans: (b)

Solution: Since $x, 2y, 3z$ are in AP, so $4y = x+3z$ (i)

Also x, y, z are in GP $y = xr$ and $z = yr$ (ii)

From (i) and (ii) we get $3r^2 - 4r + 1 = 0$

Solving this equation we get $r = \frac{1}{3}$ and $r = 1$ (not possible)

Q7. If x, y, z are distinct positive integers then the value of $(x+y)(y+z)(z+x)$ is

- (a) $=8xyz$ (b) $< 8xyz$ (c) $> 8xyz$ (d) $= 4xyz$

Ans: (c)

Solution: $\frac{x+y}{2} > \sqrt{xy}$, $\frac{z+y}{2} > \sqrt{zy}$, $\frac{x+z}{2} > \sqrt{xz}$

$$(x+y)(y+z)(z+x) > 2\sqrt{xy} \cdot 2\sqrt{zy} \cdot 2\sqrt{xz} \implies (x+y)(y+z)(z+x) > 8xyz$$

Q8. The length of three unequal edges of a rectangular solid block are in G.P. The volume of the block is 216 cm^3 and the total surface area is 252 cm^2 . The length of the longest side is

- (a) 12 cm (b) 6 cm (c) 18cm (d) 3 cm

Ans: (a)

Let the lengths be $\frac{a}{r}$, a , ar

Volume of block is $\frac{a}{r} \times a \times ar = 216 \implies a^3 = 6^3 \implies a = 6 \text{ cm.}$

Given that total surface is 252 cm^2 .

$$2\left(\frac{a}{r} \times a + a \times ar + ar \times \frac{a}{r}\right) = 252 \implies r = 2, \frac{1}{2}$$

Hence the lengths are 3, 6 and 12 cm.

Q9. In a G.P. of even number of terms, the sum of all the terms is 5 times the sum of odd terms, the common ratio of the G.P. is.

- (a) $-\frac{4}{5}$ (b) $\frac{1}{5}$ (c) 4 (d) none of these

Ans: (c)

Solution: Let $a, ar, ar^2, \dots, ar^{2n-1}$ be a G.P. with $2n$ terms. Let the sum of all its terms and odd terms be S_1 and S_2 respectively.

It is given that $S_1 = 5 S_2$

$$(a + ar + ar^2 + \dots + ar^{2n-1}) = 5(a + ar^2 + ar^4 + \dots + ar^{2n-2})$$

Using sum of n terms formula and solving we get $r = 4$

Q 10. The minimum value of the expression $3^x + 3^{1-x}$, $x \in \mathbb{R}$, is

- (a) 0 (b) $\frac{1}{3}$ (c) 3 (d) $2\sqrt{3}$

Ans: (d)

Solution: Using $AM \geq GM$, we obtain

$$\frac{3^x + 3^{1-x}}{2} \geq \sqrt{3^x \times 3^{1-x}} \implies \frac{3^x + 3^{1-x}}{2} \geq \sqrt{3}$$

Hence, after solving this equation, the minimum value of $3^x + 3^{1-x}$ is $2\sqrt{3}$.

ASSERTION – REASON BASED QUESTIONS SOLVED

In the following questions, a statement of **Assertion (A)** is followed by a statement of **Reason(R)**.

Pick the correct option:

- A) Both Assertion (A) and Reason(R) are true and Reason(R) is the correct explanation of Assertion (A).
- B) Both Assertion (A) and Reason(R) are true but Reason(R) is not the correct explanation of Assertion (A).
- C) Assertion (A) is true but Reason(R) is false.
- D) Assertion (A) is false but Reason(R) is true.

Q 1. Assertion (A): The minimum value of $4^x + 4^{1-x}$, $x \in \mathbb{R}$ is 4.

Reason (R): A.M. $\geq$ G.M.

Ans: A

Solution: $\frac{4^x + 4^{1-x}}{2} \geq \sqrt{4^x \times 4^{1-x}}$

$$\frac{4^x + 4^{1-x}}{2} \geq 2 \Rightarrow 4^x + 4^{1-x} \geq 4$$

So Assertion is true & Reason is correct explanation.

Q 2. Assertion (A): If for any real x , $2^{1+x} + 2^{1-x}$, λ and $3^x + 3^{-x}$ are three equidistant terms of an A.P., then $\lambda \geq 3$

Reason (R): $AM \geq GM$

Ans: A

Solution: Assertion;

$$2^{1+x} + 2^{1-x}, \lambda \text{ and } 3^x + 3^{-x} \text{ are in A.P.} \Rightarrow 2\lambda = 2^{1+x} + 2^{1-x} + 3^x + 3^{-x}$$

$$= 2(2^x + 2^{-x}) + 3^x + 3^{-x}$$

$$AM \geq GM.$$

$$2^x + 2^{-x} \geq 2, \quad 3^x + 3^{-x} \geq 2$$

$$2\lambda \geq 4+2 \Rightarrow \lambda \geq 3$$

Q 3. Assertion (A): If $x > 1$, the sum to infinite series

$$1+3\left(1-\frac{1}{x}\right)+5\left(1-\frac{1}{x}\right)^2+7\left(1-\frac{1}{x}\right)^3+\dots \text{ is } x^2 - x$$

Reason (R): If $0 < y < 1$, the sum of the series $1+3y+5y^2+7y^3+\dots$ Is $\frac{1+y}{(1-y)^2}$.

Ans: A

Solution:

$$S = 1+3y+5y^2+7y^3+\dots$$

$$yS = y+3y^2+5y^3+\dots$$

$$S(1-y) = 1+2y+2y^2+2y^3+\dots$$

$$S(1-y) = 1 + \frac{2y}{1-y} \Rightarrow S = \frac{1+y}{(1-y)^2}$$

So, Reason is true

Putting $y = 1 - \frac{1}{x}$ in the above sum, we get $S = x^2 - x$

Assertion is also true and Reason(R) is correct explanation of (A)

Q 4. Assertion (A): A sequence is said to be finite if it has finite numbers of terms.

Reason (R): The n^{th} term of the sequence: $2, 2, \frac{8}{3}, 4, \dots$ Is $\frac{2^n}{n}$.

Ans: B

Q 5. Assertion (A): The sum of infinite terms of G.P. is given by $S_{\infty} = \frac{a}{1-r}$ provided $|r| < 1$.

Reason (R): The sum of n terms of G.P. is $S_n = \frac{a(r^n-1)}{r-1}$

Ans: B

Q 6. Assertion (A): The value of k for which $\frac{3}{4}, k, \frac{4}{3}$ are in G.P. is 1 only.

Reason (R): If x, y, z are in G.P., then $y^2 = xz$.

Ans: D

Solution: $\frac{3}{4}, k, \frac{4}{3}$ are in G.P.

$$k^2 = \frac{3}{4} \times \frac{4}{3} \Rightarrow k = \pm 1$$

The assertion that the value of k is only 1 is incorrect.

Q 7. Assertion (A): The sequence 8, 4, 2, 1, 0.5, ... is a Geometric Progression.

Reason (R): A sequence is said to be a *G.P* if the ratio of any term to it's preceding term is constant except first term..

Ans: A

Solution: The sequence has terms 8, 4, 2, 1, ... The ratio $\frac{4}{8} = \frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{2}{4} = \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{2}$. Since the ratio between consecutive terms is constant ($r = \frac{1}{2}$), the sequence is a GP. The reason R correctly states the definition of a GP, which justifies the Assertion (A).

Q 8. Assertion (A): The sum of the infinite geometric series $1 + \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{9} + \frac{1}{27} + \dots$ is $\frac{3}{2}$.

Reason (R): The sum of an infinite geometric series exists if the absolute value of the common ratio is less than 1, and the sum is given by $S = \frac{a}{1-r}$

Ans: A

Solution: Here, the first term $a = 1$ and the common ratio $r = \frac{1}{3}$. Since $|r| = \left|\frac{1}{3}\right| = \frac{1}{3} < 1$, the sum exists.

Using the formula $S = \frac{a}{1-r}$ the sum is $S = \frac{1}{1-\frac{1}{3}} = \frac{3}{2}$.

Assertion (A) is true.

Reason (R) correctly states the condition for the existence of the sum of an infinite GP and provides the correct formula, which explains A.

Q 9. Assertion (A): The geometric mean between 5 and 125 is 25.

Reason (R): The geometric mean (GM) between two positive numbers a and b is given by $\sqrt{ab}$

Ans: A

Solution: $GM = \sqrt{5 \times 125} = 25 \Rightarrow GM = \sqrt{ab}$

Q10. Assertion (A): For any two positive numbers, Arithmetic Mean is greater than or equal to its Geometric Mean.

Reason (R): For the given numbers a and b , $(a - b)^2 \geq 0$

Ans: A)

Solution:

$$(a - b)^2 \geq 0 \Rightarrow a^2 - 2ab + b^2 \geq 0$$
$$a^2 + 2ab + b^2 \geq 4ab \Rightarrow (a + b)^2 \geq 4ab$$
$$(a + b) \geq 2\sqrt{ab} \Rightarrow \frac{(a+b)}{2} \geq \sqrt{ab}$$

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS SOLVED

Q 1. Find the first two terms of the sequence whose n^{th} term is given by

$$a_n = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{n}, & \text{if } n \text{ is even} \\ \frac{2}{n}, & \text{if } n \text{ is odd} \end{cases}$$

Solution: n is odd then $n=1 \Rightarrow a_1 = \frac{2}{1}$
 n is even then $n=2 \Rightarrow a_2 = \frac{1}{2}$

Q 2. n Arithmetic Means are inserted between 3 and 17. The last mean is three times the first mean. Find n .

Solution: Let n AM's $A_1, A_2, A_3, \dots, A_n$ are inserted

$$\text{Also } A_n = 3A_1 \Rightarrow 17 - d = 3(3+d) \Rightarrow d = 2$$

$$a_n = a + (n-1)d \Rightarrow 17 = 3 + (n+2-1)2$$

$$n = 6$$

Q 3 Find the value of K for which $\frac{-2}{7}, K, \frac{-7}{2}$ are in G.P.

Solution: $\frac{-2}{7}, K, \frac{-7}{2}$ are in G.P

$$\text{Then } K^2 = \frac{-2}{7} \times \frac{-7}{2} \Rightarrow K = \pm 1$$

Q 4 Show that the sum of 500 AM's between $\frac{3}{2}$ and $\frac{7}{2}$ is 1250.

Solution: Since sum of n AM's between a and b = $n \left(\frac{a+b}{2} \right) = 500 \left(\frac{\frac{3}{2} + \frac{7}{2}}{2} \right) = 1250$

Q 5 Find 8th term of G.P. 0.3, 0.06, 0.012,

Solution: here $r = \frac{0.06}{0.3} = 0.2$

$$a_8 = ar^7 \Rightarrow a_8 = 0.3 (0.2)^7$$

Q 6 Which term of the G.P. 2, $2\sqrt{2}$, 4, Is 8?

Solution: $a_n = ar^{n-1} \Rightarrow 8 = 2(\sqrt{2})^{n-1}$
 $4 = (\sqrt{2})^{n-1} \Rightarrow (\sqrt{2})^4 = (\sqrt{2})^{n-1}$
 $\Rightarrow n = 5$

Q 7 Find the sum $\sqrt{2} + 2 + 2\sqrt{2} + \dots$ up to 8 terms.

Solution: $S_n = a \left(\frac{r^n - 1}{r - 1} \right)$
 $= \frac{\sqrt{2}((\sqrt{2})^8 - 1)}{\sqrt{2} - 1} = 15(2 + \sqrt{2})$

Q 8 The 4th, 8th and 11th terms of a G.P. are p, q and s respectively. Show that $q^2 = ps$

Solution: $ar^4 = p, ar^7 = q \text{ \& } ar^{10} = s$
 $\therefore q^2 = (ar^7)^2 = ar^4 \times ar^{10} \Rightarrow q^2 = ps$

Q 9. If A.M. and G.M. of roots of a quadratic equation are 8 and 5 respectively then obtain the quadratic equation.

Solution: Let a and b are the roots of required quadratic equation

Equation having roots a and b is $x^2 - (a+b)x + ab = 0$

$$a+b = 16 \text{ and } ab = 25$$

required equation is $x^2 - 16x + 25 = 0$

Q 10. The first term of a G.P. is 2 and the sum of infinite terms is 6. Find the common ratio.

Solution: $S_\infty = \frac{a}{1-r}$
 $6 = \frac{2}{1-r} \Rightarrow r = \frac{2}{3}$

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS SOLVED

Q 1. For the sequence $a_n, a_1 = \frac{1}{2}, a_2 = -3$ and $a_n = \frac{a_{n-1}}{a_{n-1} + \frac{1}{3}} - 3, n > 2$ find $\frac{a_3}{a_4}$

Solution: $n = 3, a_3 = \frac{a_1}{a_2 + \frac{1}{3}} - 3 = \frac{\frac{1}{2}}{-3 + \frac{1}{3}} - 3 = -\frac{51}{16}$

$$n = 4, a_4 = \frac{a_2}{a_3 + \frac{1}{3}} - 3 = \frac{-3}{-\frac{51}{16} + \frac{1}{3}} - 3 = -\frac{267}{137}$$

$$\frac{a_3}{a_4} = \frac{2329}{1424}$$

Q 2. Insert 3 Arithmetic mean between 2 and 10.

Solution: Let three A.M. are A_1, A_2 and A_3

Then 2, $A_1, A_2, A_3, 10$ are in A.P.

$$\Rightarrow 2 + 4d = 10 \Rightarrow d = 2$$

$$\text{Now, } A_1 = a + d = 2 + 2 = 4$$

$$A_2 = A_1 + d = 4 + 2 = 6$$

$$A_3 = A_2 + d = 6 + 2 = 8$$

Q 3. Find the sum of the product of the corresponding terms of the sequences 2, 4, 8, 16, 32 and 128, 32, 8, 2, $\frac{1}{2}$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Solution: required sum} &= 2 \times 128 + 4 \times 32 + 8 \times 8 + 16 \times 2 + 32 \times \frac{1}{2} \\ &= 256 + 128 + 64 + 32 + 16 \\ &= 2^8 + 2^7 + 2^6 + 2^5 + 2^4 \\ &= \frac{2^8 \left(1 - \left(\frac{1}{2} \right)^5 \right)}{1 - \frac{1}{2}} = 496 \end{aligned}$$

Q 4. If the first and the n^{th} term of a G.P. are a and b respectively and p is the product of n terms, prove that $p^2 = (ab)^n$

Solution: First term = a

$$n^{\text{th}} \text{ term} = b \Rightarrow a r^{n-1} = b$$

Also $p = a \times ar \times ar^2 \times ar^3 \times \dots \times n \text{ terms}$

$$= a^n r^{1+2+3+4+\dots+(n-1) \text{ terms}} \Rightarrow p = a^n r^{\frac{n(n-1)}{2}}$$

$$p^2 = a^{2n} r^{n(n-1)} \Rightarrow p^2 = (a a r^{n-1})^n$$

$$p^2 = (ab)^n$$

Q 5. Find three numbers in G.P. whose sum is 7 and product is 8.

Solution: Let three terms in G.P. are $\frac{a}{r}, a, ar$

$$\frac{a}{r} \times a \times ar = 8 \Rightarrow a = 2$$

$$\frac{a}{r} + a + ar = 7 \quad (i)$$

Putting the value of a in equation (i) we get an equation

$$2r^2 - 5r + 2 = 0 \Rightarrow r = \frac{1}{2}, 2$$

Required numbers are 4, 2, 1 or 1, 2, 4

Q 6. A.M. between two positive numbers is 34 and their G.M. is 16. Find the numbers.

Solution: Let the numbers be a and b

$$\text{A.M.} = \frac{a+b}{2} = 34 \Rightarrow a + b = 68 \quad (i)$$

$$\text{G.M.} = \sqrt{ab} = 16 \Rightarrow ab = 256 \quad (ii)$$

$$\begin{aligned} (a-b)^2 &= (a+b)^2 - 4ab \\ &= (68)^2 - 4 \times 256 \end{aligned}$$

$$(a-b) = 60 \quad (iii)$$

Solving equation (i) and (ii) we get $a = 64$ and $b = 4$

Two numbers are 64, 4

Q 7. Find the value of $0.4\overline{37}$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Solution: } 0.4\overline{37} &= 0.437373737\ldots\infty \\ &= 0.4 + 0.037 + 0.00037 + \ldots\infty \\ &= \frac{4}{10} + \frac{37}{1000} + \frac{37}{100000} + \ldots\infty \\ &= \frac{4}{10} + 37\left(\frac{1}{10^3} + \frac{1}{10^5} + \cdots\infty\right) \\ &= \frac{4}{10} + 37\left(\frac{\frac{1}{1000}}{1 - \frac{1}{100}}\right) \\ &= \frac{4}{10} + \frac{37}{1000} \times \frac{100}{99} = \frac{433}{990}\end{aligned}$$

Q 8. Determine the number of terms of a G.P. if $a_1 = 3$, $a_n = 96$, $S_n = 189$

Solution: Let r be the common ratio

$$\begin{aligned}a_n &= 96, & S_n &= 189 \\ a r^{n-1} &= 96, & S_n &= \frac{a(r^n - 1)}{r - 1} = 189 \\ 3r^{n-1} &= 96, & \frac{3(r^n - 1)}{r - 1} &= 189 \\ r^{n-1} &= 32 & \text{(i) } \frac{(r^n - 1)}{r - 1} &= 63 \quad \text{(ii)}\end{aligned}$$

From equation (i) and (ii) $r = 2$

Putting the value of r in equation (i) we get $n = 6$

Q 9. Show that the ratio of the sum of first n terms of a G.P. to the sum of terms $(n+1)^{\text{th}}$ to $(2n)^{\text{th}}$ term is $\frac{1}{r^n}$.

Solution: Let a, r be the first term and common ratio of G.P. $S_n = \frac{a(1-r^n)}{1-r}$

Sum of terms from $(n+1)^{\text{th}}$ to $(2n)^{\text{th}}$ term,

$$\begin{aligned}S'_n &= ar^n + ar^{n+1} + ar^{n+2} + \ldots + ar^{2n-1} \\ &= \frac{ar^n(1-r^n)}{1-r} \\ \frac{S_n}{S'_n} &= \frac{\frac{a(1-r^n)}{1-r}}{\frac{ar^n(1-r^n)}{1-r}} = \frac{1}{r^n} \quad \text{Hence Proved}\end{aligned}$$

Q 10. Find the sum of the G.P. $3+6+12+24+\ldots+1536$.

Solution: $a=3$, $r=6\div3=2$

$$\begin{aligned}a_n &= ar^{n-1} \\ 1536 &= 3 \times 2^{n-1} \Rightarrow 2^{10} = 2^n \Rightarrow n = 10 \\ S_n &= \frac{a(r^n - 1)}{r - 1} \Rightarrow S_n = \frac{3(2^{10} - 1)}{2 - 1} = 3069\end{aligned}$$

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS SOLVED

Q 1. Find the sum of the series: $0.7+0.77+0.777+0.7777+\ldots$ to n terms

Solution: $S = 7(0.1+0.11+0.111+0.1111+\ldots+0.111\ldots1 \text{ (n times)})$
 $= \frac{7}{9}(0.9 + 0.99 + 0.999 + 0.9999 + \cdots + 0.99999 \ldots 9 \text{ (n times)})$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{7}{9} \left\{ \left(1 - \frac{1}{10}\right) + \left(1 - \frac{1}{100}\right) + \left(1 - \frac{1}{1000}\right) + \left(1 - \frac{1}{10000}\right) + \dots + \frac{1}{100\dots 0(n \text{ zeroes})} \right\} \\
&= \frac{7}{9} \left\{ \left(1 - \frac{1}{10}\right) + \left(1 - \frac{1}{10^2}\right) + \left(1 - \frac{1}{10^3}\right) + \left(1 - \frac{1}{10^4}\right) + \dots + \left(1 - \frac{1}{10^n}\right) \right\} \\
&= \frac{7}{9} \left\{ n - \left(\frac{1}{10} + \frac{1}{10^2} + \frac{1}{10^3} + \frac{1}{10^4} + \dots + \frac{1}{10^n}\right) \right\} \\
&= \frac{7}{9} \left\{ n - \frac{\frac{1}{10} \left(1 - \left(\frac{1}{10}\right)^n\right)}{\left(1 - \frac{1}{10}\right)} \right\} = \frac{7}{81} \left(9n - 1 + \frac{1}{10^n}\right)
\end{aligned}$$

Q 2. What will Rs:500 amounts to in 10 years after its deposit in a bank which pays annual interest rate of 10% p.a compounded annually.

Solution: We have principal = Rs 500, Rate = 10%

$$\text{Amount at the end of first year} = P \left(1 + \frac{R}{100}\right)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Amount at the end of second year} &= P \left(1 + \frac{R}{100}\right) + P \left(1 + \frac{R}{100}\right) \frac{R}{100} \\
&= P \left(1 + \frac{R}{100}\right) \left(1 + \frac{R}{100}\right) = P \left(1 + \frac{R}{100}\right)^2
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Amount at the end of third year} &= P \left(1 + \frac{R}{100}\right)^2 + P \left(1 + \frac{R}{100}\right)^2 \frac{R}{100} \\
&= P \left(1 + \frac{R}{100}\right)^3 \quad \text{and so on}
\end{aligned}$$

We find that amounts at the end of various year form a G.P.

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Amount at the end of } 10^{\text{th}} \text{ year} &= 11^{\text{th}} \text{ term of G.P.} = P \left(1 + \frac{R}{100}\right)^{10} \\
&= 500 \left(1 + \frac{10}{100}\right)^{10} \\
&= 500 \left(\frac{11}{10}\right)^{10}
\end{aligned}$$

Q3. Find the natural number 'a' for which $\sum_{p=1}^n f(a+p) = 16(2^n - 1)$, where the function 'f' satisfies the relation $f(x+y) = f(x) \cdot f(y)$, $x, y \in N$, and $f(1) = 2$.

Solution: Since $f(x+y) = f(x) \cdot f(y)$

$$\text{Put } x = 1, y = 1$$

$$f(1+1) = f(1) \cdot f(1) = 2 \cdot 2 = 2^2$$

$$f(2) = 2^2$$

$$f(3) = f(2+1) = f(2) \cdot f(1) = 2^2 \cdot 2 = 2^3$$

$$f(3) = 2^3$$

$$\text{Continuing in this way, } f(n) = 2^n, \quad n \in N$$

$$\text{Now } \sum_{p=1}^n f(a+p) = 16(2^n - 1)$$

$$f(a+1) + f(a+2) + f(a+3) + \dots + f(a+n) = 16(2^n - 1)$$

$$2^{a+1} + 2^{a+2} + 2^{a+3} + \dots + 2^{a+n} = 16(2^n - 1)$$

$$\text{G.P., first term} = 2^{a+1}, r = 2$$

$$\frac{2^{a+1}(2^n - 1)}{2 - 1} = 16(2^n - 1)$$

$$2^{a+1}(2^n - 1) = 16(2^n - 1) \Rightarrow 2^{a+1} = 16$$

$$2^{a+1} = 2^4 \Rightarrow a + 1 = 4 \Rightarrow a = 3$$

Q4. If A and G be the A.M. and G.M. respectively between two positive numbers prove that the Numbers are $\pm\sqrt{(A+G)(A-G)}$.

Solution: Let a, b be two positive numbers such that $A = \frac{a+b}{2}$ and $G^2 = ab$

We know that quadratic equation having roots as a and b can be given as

$$x^2 - (a+b)x + ab = 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad x^2 - 2Ax + G^2 = 0$$

$$x = \frac{2A \pm \sqrt{4A^2 - 4G^2}}{2}$$

$$x = A \pm \sqrt{A^2 - G^2} \text{ or } A \pm \sqrt{A(A+G)(A-G)}$$

Q5. The sum of three numbers in G.P. is 56. If we subtract 1, 7, 21 from these numbers in that order, we obtain an arithmetic progression. Find the numbers.

Solution: Let the numbers in G.P. be a, ar, ar². It is given that the sum of these numbers is 56.

$$\therefore a + ar + ar^2 = 56 \dots (i)$$

It is also given that a - 1, ar - 7 and ar² - 21 are in A.P.

$$2(ar - 7) = (a - 1) + (ar^2 - 21) \Rightarrow 2ar = a + ar^2 - 8 \Rightarrow$$

$$a + ar^2 = 2ar + 8 \dots (ii)$$

$$\text{From (i), we obtain } a + ar^2 = 56 - ar \dots (iii)$$

Substituting $a + ar^2 = 56 - ar$ on the LHS of (ii), we get

$$2ar + 8 = 56 - ar \Rightarrow 3ar = 48 \Rightarrow ar = 16 \Rightarrow r = \frac{16}{a}$$

Putting $r = \frac{16}{a}$ in (i), we get

$$a + 16 + \frac{256}{a} = 56 \Rightarrow a^2 + 16a + 256 = 56a \Rightarrow a^2 - 40a + 256 = 0 \Rightarrow (a - 32)(a - 8) = 0$$

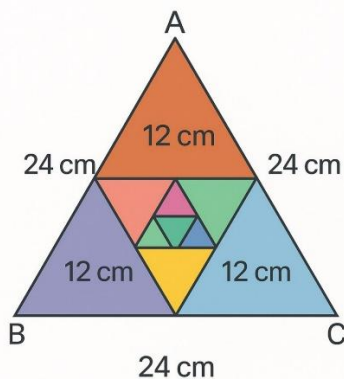
$$\Rightarrow a = 8, 32$$

Putting $a = 8$, in $r = \frac{16}{a}$ we get: $r = \frac{16}{8} = 2$.

Putting $a = 32$, in $r = \frac{16}{a}$ we get: $r = \frac{16}{32} = \frac{1}{2}$

CASE STUDY BASED QUESTIONS SOLVED

Q 1. In Rangoli competition in school, Renu made Rangoli in the equilateral shape. Each side of an equilateral triangle is 24 cm. The mid-point of its sides are joined to form another triangle. This process is going continuously infinite.



Based on above information, answer the following questions.

(i) Find the side of the 5th triangle (in cm)

(ii) Find the sum of perimeter of first 6 triangles (in cm)

(iii) Find the sum of areas of all the triangles (in sq. cm).

OR

(iii) Find the sum of perimeter of all triangles (in cm).

Solution:

(i) Side of first triangle = 24, Side of second triangle = 12

side of third triangle = 6, $a = 24, r = \frac{1}{2}$

Side of the fifth triangle = $a_5 = ar^4 = 24 \times \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^4 = \frac{24}{16} = 1.5$ cm

(ii) Perimeter of first triangle = 72, Perimeter of second triangle = 36

perimeter of third triangle = 18

$$\therefore a = 72 \quad r = \frac{36}{72} = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$\therefore \text{Sum of perimeter of first 6 triangle, } S_6 = \frac{a(1-r^6)}{1-r} = \frac{72\left(1-\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^6\right)}{1-\frac{1}{2}} = \frac{72 \times 63 \times 2}{2^6} = \frac{567}{4} \text{ cm}$$

(iii) Area of first triangle = $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}(24)^2$

Area of second triangle = $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}(12)^2$

Area of third triangle = $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}(6)^2$

$$a = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}(24)^2, \quad r = \frac{1}{4}$$

$$\text{Sum of the areas of all triangles} = \frac{a}{1-r} = \frac{\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}(24)^2}{1-\frac{1}{4}} = \frac{\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}(24)^2}{\frac{3}{4}} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}(24)^2$$

$$= 192\sqrt{3} \text{ cm}$$

OR

(iii) The sum of perimeter of all triangle = $3(24 + 12 + 6 + \dots)$

$$S = 3\left(\frac{a}{1-r}\right) = 3\left(\frac{24}{1-\frac{1}{2}}\right) = 144 \text{ cm}$$

Q 2. After striking a floor a certain ball rebounds $\left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^{th}$ of the height from it has fallen. The ball is gently dropped from a height of 100 metres.



Based on this information, answer the following questions:

- (i) Find the height to which the ball rebounds in 3rd rebound.
- (ii) Find the height to which the ball rebounds in 8th rebound.
- (iii) Find the total distance travelled by the ball in first five rebounds.

OR

- (iii) Find the total distance travelled by the ball before coming to rest.

Solution:

Initially the ball falls from a height of 100 meters.

After striking the floor it rebounds, and goes to a height of $100 \times \frac{4}{5}$ meters.

Now, it falls from a height of $100 \times \frac{4}{5}$ metres and

after rebounding it goes to a height of $\left(100 \times \frac{4}{5}\right) \times \frac{4}{5} = 100 \left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^2$ metres.

This process is continued till the ball comes to rest.

- (i) in third rebound it goes up to a height of $100 \left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^3 = 51.4$ m.

- (i) in 8th rebound it goes up to a height $= 100 \left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^8$

- (iii) Total distance travelled by the ball in first five rebounds

$$\begin{aligned} &= 100 + 2 \left[100 \times \frac{4}{5} + 100 \times \left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^2 + \dots + 100 \times \left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^5 \right] \\ &= 100 + 2 \left[100 \times \frac{4}{5} \frac{\left\{1 - \left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^5\right\}}{1 - \frac{4}{5}} \right] \\ &= 100 + 800 \left\{1 - \left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^5\right\} = 900 - 800 \times \left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^5 = 900 - 262.14 = 637.86 \text{ metres.} \end{aligned}$$

OR

- (iii) Total distance travelled by the ball before coming to rest

$$\begin{aligned} &= 100 + 2 \left\{ 100 \times \frac{4}{5} + 100 \times \left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^2 + 100 \times \left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^3 + \dots \right\} \\ &= 100 + 2 \left\{ \frac{100 \times \frac{4}{5}}{1 - \frac{4}{5}} \right\} = 100 + 800 = 900 \text{ metres.} \end{aligned}$$

Q 3 A sequence of non-zero numbers is said to be a geometric progression, if the ratio of each term, except the first one, by its preceding term is always constant. Rohan, being a plant lover, decides to open a nursery and he bought few plants and pots. He wants to place pots in such a way that the number of pots in the first row is 2, in second row is 4 and in the third row is 8 and so on.....



- (i) Find the constant multiple by which the number of pots is increasing in every row.
- (ii) Find the number of pots in 8th row.
- (iii) Find the difference in number of pots placed in 7th row and 5th row.

OR

- (iii) If Rohan wants to place 510 pots in total, then find the total number of rows formed in this arrangement.

Solution:

- (i) The number of pots in each row is 2, 4, 8, ...

This forms a geometric progression,

$$\text{Where } a = 2, r = \frac{4}{2} = 2$$

Hence, the constant multiple by which the number of pots is increasing in every row is 2.

- (ii) Number of pots in 8th row = $a_8 \Rightarrow a_8 = ar^{8-1} = 2(2)^7 = 2^8 = 256$

- (iii) Number of pots in 7th row, $a_7 = 2(2)^{7-1} = 2 \cdot 2^6 = 2^7 = 128$

$$\text{Number of pots in 5th row, } a_5 = 2(2)^{5-1} = 2 \cdot 2^4 = 2^5 = 32$$

$$\text{required answer} = 128 - 32 = 96$$

OR

- (iii) Let there be n number of rows.

$$\begin{aligned} S_n &= a \left(\frac{r^n - 1}{r - 1} \right) \Rightarrow 510 = 2 \left(\frac{2^n - 1}{2 - 1} \right) \Rightarrow \frac{510}{2} = 2^n - 1 \\ &\Rightarrow 255 = 2^n - 1 \Rightarrow 256 = 2^n \Rightarrow 2^8 = 2^n \Rightarrow n = 8 \end{aligned}$$

HIGHER ORDER THINKING SKILLS

Q 1 Even number of AM's are inserted between two given numbers whose sum is $2\frac{1}{6}$.

Also, sum of AM's exceeds their number by 1. Find the number of AM's inserted.

Solution: Let AM's inserted be $2n$ and

Let number be a and b

$$a+b = 2\frac{1}{6}$$

Let AM's be $A_1, A_2, A_3, \dots, A_{2n}$

$a, A_1, A_2, A_3, \dots, A_{2n}, b$ are in AP

$$\text{Also given } A_1 + A_2 + A_3 + \dots + A_{2n} = 2n+1$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{2n}{2} [A_1 + A_{2n}] = 2n+1$$

$$\Rightarrow n[a+b] = 2n+1 \Rightarrow n[a+b] = 2n+1$$

$$\Rightarrow n\left[\frac{13}{6}\right] = 2n+1 \Rightarrow n=6$$

$$\text{AM's inserted} = 2 \times 6 = 12$$

Q2. In a finite G.P. the product of terms equidistant from the beginning and the end is always same and equal to the product of first and last term.

Solution: Let $a_1, a_2, a_3, a_4, \dots, a_n$ be in a finite G.P. and common ratio is r

$$a_k = k^{\text{th}} \text{ term from the beginning} = a_1 r^{k-1}$$

$$k^{\text{th}} \text{ term from the end} = ar^{n-k}, \text{ where } 1 < k < n$$

$$\text{Now, } k^{\text{th}} \text{ term from the beginning} \times k^{\text{th}} \text{ term from the end} = ar^{k-1} \times a(r)^{n-k} = a_1 a_n.$$

Q3. If $x = 1 + a + a^2 + a^3 + \dots \infty$ where $|a| < 1$ and $y = 1 + b + b^2 + b^3 + \dots \infty$ where $|b| < 1$, prove that

$$1 + ab + (ab)^2 + (ab)^3 + \dots \infty = \frac{xy}{x+y-1}$$

$$\text{Solution: } x = 1 + a + a^2 + a^3 + \dots \infty \Rightarrow x = \frac{1}{1-a} \Rightarrow a = 1 - \frac{1}{x}$$

$$y = 1 + b + b^2 + b^3 + \dots \infty \Rightarrow y = \frac{1}{1-b} \Rightarrow b = 1 - \frac{1}{y}$$

$$1 + ab + (ab)^2 + (ab)^3 + \dots \infty = \frac{1}{1-ab}$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{1}{1 - \left(1 - \frac{1}{x}\right)\left(1 - \frac{1}{y}\right)} = \frac{xy}{x+y-1}$$

Q 4 If a, b, c are in G.P. and x, y are the arithmetic means of a, b and b, c

Respectively, then prove that $\frac{a}{x} + \frac{c}{y} = 2$

Solution: It is given that

$$a, b, c \text{ are in G.P.} \Rightarrow b^2 = ac$$

$$x \text{ is A.M. of } a, b \Rightarrow x = \frac{a+b}{2} \text{ and } y \text{ is A.M. of } b, c \Rightarrow y = \frac{b+c}{2}$$

$$\frac{a}{x} + \frac{c}{y} = \frac{2a}{a+b} + \frac{2c}{b+c}$$

$$\frac{a}{x} + \frac{c}{y} = \frac{2(ab+2ac+bc)}{(ab+ac+b^2+bc)} = \frac{2(ab+2ac+bc)}{(ab+ac+ac+bc)} = 2$$

Q 5. One side of a square is 10 cm. The mid points of its sides are joined to form another square whose mid points are again joined to form one more square and this process is continued infinitely. Find the sum of the areas of all the square so formed.

Solution: First square is ABCD and the square formed by joining the mid points are EFGH and PQRS etc.

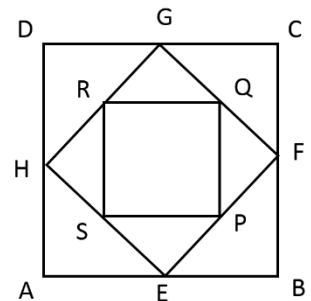
$$\text{Side of first square} = 10\text{cm,}$$

$$\text{Side of second square} = \sqrt{25 + 25} = 5\sqrt{2}$$

$$\text{Side of third square} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{5\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{5\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)^2} = 5$$

$$\text{Sum of the areas of all the squares} = (10)^2 + (5\sqrt{2})^2 + (5)^2 + \dots$$

$$\text{Areas form G.P. } S_{\infty} = \frac{a}{1-r} = \frac{100}{1-\frac{1}{2}} = 200\text{cm}^2$$



CHAPTER- 9: STRAIGHT LINES

Definitions and Formulae:

1. Distance formula: Distance between the points P (x_1, y_1) and Q (x_2, y_2)

$$PQ = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2}$$

2. The coordinates of a point dividing the line segment joining the points (x_1, y_1) and (x_2, y_2) in the ratio $m: n$.

i) Internal division: $\left(\frac{mx_2 + nx_1}{m+n}, \frac{my_2 + ny_1}{m+n}\right)$

ii) External division: $\left(\frac{mx_2 - nx_1}{m-n}, \frac{my_2 - ny_1}{m-n}\right)$

3. Mid-point formula $\left(\frac{x_2 + x_1}{2}, \frac{y_2 + y_1}{2}\right)$

4. Area of a triangle, whose vertices are (x_1, y_1) (x_2, y_2) and (x_3, y_3) is

$$= \frac{1}{2} |x_1(y_2 - y_3) + x_2(y_3 - y_1) + x_3(y_1 - y_2)|$$

5. Slope of a line:

Definition: If θ is the inclination of a line l then $\tan \theta$ is called the slope or gradient of the line l . The slope of a line whose inclination is 90° is not defined. The slope of a line is denoted by m . Thus, $m = \tan \theta$, $\theta \neq 90^\circ$ It may be observed that the slope of the x-axis is zero and slope of the y-axis is not defined.

6. Slope of a line when coordinates of any two points on the line are given.

Let P(x_1, y_1) and Q(x_2, y_2) be two points on non-vertical line l whose inclination is θ .

$$\text{slope of line is } m = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$$

7. Conditions for parallelism and perpendicularity of lines in terms of their slopes in a coordinate plane: a) For parallel lines: $m_1 = m_2$, i.e. their slopes are equal.

b) For perpendicular lines $m_1 m_2 = -1$ i.e. product of the slope of two lines is -1.

8. Angle between two lines.

The acute angle (say θ) between lines L_1 and L_2 with slopes m_1 and m_2 , respectively, is given by $\tan$

$$\theta = \left| \frac{m_2 - m_1}{1 + m_1 m_2} \right| \text{ as } m_1 m_2 + 1 \neq 0$$

9. Various Forms of the Equation of a Line

i) Horizontal and vertical line:

a) $x = \pm a$ which is an equation of line parallel to y-axis

b) $y = \pm a$ which is an equation of line parallel to x-axis

ii. Point slope form: Equation of line is $y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$

iii. Two-point form: Equation of the line $y - y_1 = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1} (x - x_1)$

iv. Slope-intercept form:

Case I: Suppose a line L with slope m cuts the y-axis at a distance c from the origin. Equation of line $y - c = m(x - 0)$ or $y = mx + c$

Case II: Suppose line L with slope m makes x-intercept d . equation of L : $y = m(x - d)$

v) Intercept form: Suppose a line L makes x-intercept a and y-intercept b on the axes.

The equation of the line making intercepts a and b on x-and y-axis, respectively, is

$$\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1$$

10) Distance of a Point from a Line.

Let $L: Ax + By + C = 0$ be a line, whose distance from the point $P(x_1, y_1)$ is d then

$$d = \left| \frac{Ax_1 + By_1 + C}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}} \right|$$

11) Distance between two parallel lines: two parallel lines can be taken in the form

$$y = mx + c_1 \dots (1) \text{ and } y = mx + c_2 \dots (2) \text{ then } d = \left| \frac{c_1 - c_2}{\sqrt{m^2 + 1}} \right|$$

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS SOLVED

Q.1. Find the value of x so that the line through $(3, x)$ and $(2, 7)$ is parallel to the line through $(-1, 4)$ and $(0, 6)$.

- a) 3 b) 6 c) 9 d) -9

Solution: we know that for two lines to be parallel, their slope must be the same. The given points are $A(3, x), B(2, 7)$ and $C(-1, 4), D(0, 6)$.

$$\text{Slope } \left(\frac{6-4}{0+1} \right) = \left(\frac{7-x}{2-3} \right), \text{ therefore } \frac{2}{1} = \left(\frac{7-x}{-1} \right) \gg -2 = 7-x \text{ therefore } x=9$$

Answer: (c)

Q.2. Slope of a line which cuts off intercepts of equal lengths on the axes is

- a) -1 b) 0 c) 2 d) 1

Solution: Given that equation of a line in intercept form is $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1$

Since $a=b$ therefore $x+y=a$, Now slope of the line is -1

Answer: (a)

Q. 3. The inclination of the line $x - y + 3 = 0$ with the positive direction of x -axis is

- a) 135° b) 35° c) 45° d) -45°

Solution: The equation of the line $x - y + 3 = 0$ can be rewritten as

$$y = x + 3. \text{ So slope of the line } m = 1. \text{ It means } \tan \theta = 1 \text{ and hence } \theta = 45^\circ$$

Answer: (c)

Q. 4. An ant is going through a line which is parallel to the line $2x+3y=6$ and the ant is also passing through the point $(1,1)$. The equation of the line on which the ant is going on is

- a) $2x+3y=5$ b) $2x+3y=10$ c) $3x+2y=6$ d) $x+y=2$

Solution: Equation of the line parallel to $2x+3y=6$ is given by $2x+3y=c$. Since the ant is passing through $(1, 1)$ it means $(1,1)$ lies on the line $2x+3y=c$, putting $(1,1)$ in this equation we get $2(1) + 3(1) = c$. So $c = 5$ and hence the required equation is $2x+3y=5$

Answer: (a)

Q. 5. The line $ax+by+c=0$ will be at a distance of one unit from the origin if:

- a) $a = b$ b) $a = -b$ c) $c^2 = a^2 + b^2$ d) $c = 0$

Solution: Using the formula for the distance between a point and a line we get distance, $1 =$

$$\frac{|c|}{\sqrt{a^2+b^2}} \text{ it means } |c| = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}, \text{ so, } c^2 = a^2 + b^2$$

Answer: (c)

Q. 6. If the slope of the line joining the points $A(x, 2)$ and $B(6, -8)$ is $-5/4$, find the value of x .

- a) 2 b) 3 c) -2 d) -3

Solution: If a line passing through (x_1, y_1) and (x_2, y_2) then slope of the line is given by: Slope = $\left(\frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}\right)$

Given points are A $(x, 2)$ and B $(6, -8)$ and the slope is $-5/4$ and $\frac{-8-2}{6-x} = -\frac{5}{4}$

$$x = -2$$

Answer: (c)

Q. 7. The equation of a line passing through $(1, 2)$ and perpendicular to the line $x + y + 1 = 0$ is

- a) $y - x + 1 = 0$ b) $y - x - 1 = 0$ c) $y - x + 2 = 0$ d) $x + y = 3$

Solution: Given that equation of line is $x + y + 1 = 0$ now equation of line perpendicular to this line is $y - x + k = 0$, since given line passing through the point $(1, 2)$, therefore $1 - 2 + k = 0$, therefore $k = 1$ now equation of line is $y - x + 1 = 0$

Answer: (a)

Q. 8. If the coordinates of the middle point of the portion of a line intercepted between the coordinate axes is $(3, 2)$, then the equation of the line will be

- (a) $2x + 3y = 12$ (b) $3x + 2y = 12$ (c) $4x - 3y = 6$ (d) $5x - 2y = 10$

Solution: Let the equation of the required line is $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1$ which intersects the x-axis at $(a, 0)$ and y-axis at $(0, b)$. Now the co-ordinates of mid-point of $(a, 0)$ and $(0, b)$ is $(3, 2)$ it means $\frac{a+0}{2} = 3$ and $\frac{0+b}{2} = 2$, it gives $a = 6$ and $b = 4$ so the equation of the line is $\frac{x}{6} + \frac{y}{4} = 1$, it gives $2x + 3y = 12$

Answer: (a)

Q. 9. What is the distance between the parallel lines $y = 2x + 1$ and $y = 2x - 4$?

- (a) $2\sqrt{5}$ (b) $\sqrt{5}$ (c) $4\sqrt{5}$ (d) $5\sqrt{5}$

Solution: Using the formula of the distance between parallel lines $y = mx + c_1$ and $y = mx + c_2$ that is $d = \left| \frac{c_1 - c_2}{\sqrt{m^2 + 1}} \right|$, we get $d = \left| \frac{1 - (-4)}{\sqrt{2^2 + 1}} \right| = \frac{5}{\sqrt{5}} = \sqrt{5}$

Answer: (b)

Q. 10. Locus means the path traced by point under given conditions. Locus is simply the equation of a curve may be line or any other curve. The locus of a point, whose abscissa and ordinate are always equal, is

- a) $x - y = 0$ b) $x + y = 1$ c) $x + y + 1 = 0$ d) None of the above

Solution: Let the abscissa and ordinate of a point "P" be (x, y) . Given condition: Abscissa = Ordinate, it means $x = y$. Hence, the locus of a point is $x - y = 0$.

Answer: (a)

ASSERTION – REASON BASED QUESTIONS SOLVED

In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R). Pick the correct option:

- A) Both Assertion (A) and Reason (R) are true and Reason (R) is the correct explanation of Assertion (A).
B) Both Assertion (A) and Reason (R) are true but Reason (R) is NOT the correct explanation of Assertion (A).
C) Assertion (A) is true but Reason (R) is false.
D) Assertion (A) is false but Reason (R) is true.

1) ASSERTION (A): slope of x-axis is 0.

REASON(R): x-axis makes zero angles with the positive direction of x-axis.

Answer: A

Solution: since $\theta = 0$ therefore $m = 0$ and x-axis are parallel to positive direction of x-axis

2) ASSERTION (A): Two parallel lines have same slope.

REASON(R): Any line parallel to x axis have slope 0.

Answer: B

Solution: Two parallel lines make equal angle with positive direction of x-axis in anticlockwise direction. It means their slope is equal. So Assertion is correct. Reason is also correct but is specific to lines which are parallel to x-axis, so it is not correct explanation of assertion.

3) ASSERTION (A): Product of slope of two perpendicular lines is -1.

REASON (R): Product of slope of x-axis and y-axis is -1.

Answer: B

Solution: Here assertion (A) is correct and Reason (R) is also correct, but Reason is specific to x-axis and y-axis not for general conditions.

4) ASSERTION (A): Parallel lines have same slope.

REASON(R): Line P: $2x + 3y = 5$ and Q: $6x + 9y = 20$ are parallel to each other.

Answer: A

Solution: Slope of line P = $-2/3$ and slope of line Q = $-2/3$, since the slope of both the lines are equal therefore the two lines are parallel.

5) ASSERTION (A): Equation of line Passing through origin is $y = mx$.

REASON (R): Line $y = mx$ have intercept on the x-axis is 0 and y-axis is 0.

Answer: B

Solution: Both Assertion (A) and Reason(R) are true but Reason(R) is NOT the correct explanation of Assertion (A).

6) ASSERTION (A): The tangent of the angle between the lines $x/a + y/b = 1$ and $x/a - y/b = 1$ is $2ab/a^2 - b^2$

REASON(R): The tangent of the angle between the lines with slopes m_1 and m_2 is given by

$$\tan \theta = \left| \frac{m_1 + m_2}{1 - m_1 m_2} \right|$$

Answer: C

Solution: Here the assertion is true but the reason the angle between the two lines is not true.

7) Assertion (A): The point (2, 3) lies on the line $y = 3x - 7$.

Reason (R): Substituting the coordinates of the point in the equation of the line satisfies the equation.

Answer: d) Assertion (A) is false but Reason(R) is true.

Solution: Substituting $x = 2$ and $y = 3$ in the equation $y = 3x - 7$, we get $3 = 3(2) - 7$, which simplifies to $3 = 6 - 7$, or $3 = -1$. This is not true, so the point (2, 3) does not lie on the line. The assertion is false, and the reason is true

8) Assertion (A): The lines $2x + 3y + 5 = 0$ and $3x - 2y + 1 = 0$ are perpendicular to each other.

Reason (R): Two lines are perpendicular if the product of their slopes is -1.

Answer: (a) Both Assertion and Reason are true and Reason is the correct explanation of Assertion.

Solution: The slope of the first line $2x + 3y + 5 = 0$ is $-2/3$, and the slope of the second line $3x - 2y + 1 = 0$ is $3/2$. The product of these slopes $(-2/3) \times (3/2) = -1$. Therefore, the lines are perpendicular, and the reason is the correct explanation of the assertion.

9) Assertion(A): Two lines with the same slope are always parallel.

Reason (R): Parallel lines have equal slopes

Answer: (a) Both Assertion (A) and Reason(R) are true and Reason(R) is the correct explanation of Assertion (A)

Solution: Both are true, the reason correctly explains the assertion, and Answer

10. Assertion (A): Equation of the horizontal line having distance “a” from the x-axis is either $y = a$ or $y = -a$.

Reason (R): Equation of vertical line having distance “b” from the y-axis is either $x = b$ or $x = -b$.

Answer: (b) Both Assertion (A) and Reason(R) are true but Reason(R) is NOT the correct explanation of Assertion (A).

Solution: Here both are correct statement but R is not giving the reason of A. These are two independent correct statements.

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS SOLVED

1) Question: Show that the line through the points (5, 6) and (2, 3) is parallel to the line through the points (9, -2) and (6, -5).

Solution: We know that for two lines to be parallel, their slope must be the same. Given points are A(5,6), B(2,3) and C(9,-2), D(6,-5)

$$\text{Slope} = \left(\frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1} \right), \text{ since } \left(\frac{3-6}{2-5} \right) = \left(\frac{-5+2}{6-9} \right). \text{ Hence proved.}$$

2) Question: If a point P(x, y) is equidistant from the points A(6, -1) and B(2, 3), find the relation between x and y.

Solution: Given: Point P(x, y) is equidistant from points A(6, -1) and B(2, 3) i.e., distance of P from A = distance of P from B Squaring both sides,

$$\sqrt{(x-6)^2 + (y+1)^2} = \sqrt{(x-2)^2 + (y-3)^2}$$

$$(x-6)^2 + (y+1)^2 = (x-2)^2 + (y-3)^2$$

$$x^2 - 12x + 36 + y^2 + 2y + 1 = x^2 - 4x + 4 + y^2 - 6y + 9$$

$$-12x + 36 + 2y + 1 = -4x + 4 - 6y + 9$$

$$x - y = 3$$

Therefore, $x - y = 3$ is the required relation.

3). Find a point on the x-axis which is equidistant from the points A(7, 6) and B(-3, 4).

Solution: Let the point on x-axis be P(x, 0). Given: Point P(x, 0) is equidistant from points A(7, 6) and B(-3, 4) i.e., distance of P from A = distance of P from B

$$\sqrt{(x-7)^2 + 36} = \sqrt{(x+3)^2 + 16}$$

Squaring both sides,

$$(x-7)^2 + 36 = (x+3)^2 + 16$$

$$x^2 - 14x + 49 + 36 = x^2 + 6x + 9 + 16$$

$$-20x = -60$$

$x = 3$ Therefore, the point on the x-axis is (3, 0).

- 4). Show that the points A(-5, 1), B(5, 5) and C(10, 7) are collinear.

Solution: Given: The points are A(-5, 1), B(5, 5) and C(10, 7). Note: Three points are collinear if the sum of lengths of any sides is equal to the length of the third side.

$$AB = \sqrt{(5 + 5)^2 + (5 - 1)^2} = \sqrt{100 + 16} = 2\sqrt{29} \text{ units}$$

$$BC = \sqrt{(10 - 5)^2 + (7 - 5)^2} = \sqrt{25 + 4} = \sqrt{29} \text{ units}$$

$$AC = \sqrt{(10 + 5)^2 + (7 - 1)^2} = \sqrt{225 + 36} = 3\sqrt{29} \text{ units}$$

From equations 1,2,3 we have $AB + BC = AC$

Therefore, the three points are collinear.

- 5). If the three points A (h, k), B(x₁, y₁) and C(x₂, y₂) lie on a line then show that

$$(h - x_1)(y_2 - y_1) = (k - y_1)(x_2 - x_1).$$

Solution: For the lines to be in a line, the slope of the adjacent lines should be the same. Given points are A(h,k), B(x₁,y₁) and C(x₂,y₂) So slope of AB = BC = CA

$$\text{Slope} = \left(\frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1} \right)$$

$$\text{Slope of AB} = \frac{y_1 - k}{x_1 - h}$$

$$\text{Slope of BC} = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$$

$$\text{Slope of AC} = \frac{y_2 - k}{x_2 - h} = \frac{y_1 - k}{x_1 - h} = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$$

Now Cross multiplying the first two equality,

$$(y_1 - k)(x_2 - x_1) = (x_1 - h)(y_2 - y_1)$$

$$(h - x_1)(y_2 - y_1) = (k - y_1)(x_2 - x_1)$$

Hence proved.

- 6). Find the slope of the line which makes an angle of 30° with the positive direction of the y-axis, measured anticlockwise.

Solution: According to the given figure, the angle made by the line from X-axis is $90 + 30 = 120^\circ$

$$\text{Slope} = (y_2 - y_1) / (x_2 - x_1)$$

We also know that slope of a line is equal to $\tan \theta$, Where $\theta = 120^\circ$ $\tan (120^\circ) = \tan (90^\circ + 30^\circ) = -\cot (30^\circ) = -\sqrt{3}$ Therefore the slope of the given line is $-\sqrt{3}$.

- 7). Find the angle between the lines whose slopes are, $\sqrt{3}$ and $\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$

Solution To find out the angle between two lines, the angle is equal to the difference in θ .

$$\text{The slope of a line} = \tan \theta = \left(\frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1} \right)$$

$$\text{So slope of the first line} = \sqrt{3} = \tan \theta \Rightarrow \theta_1 = 60^\circ$$

$$\text{The slope of the second line is} = 1/\sqrt{3} \Rightarrow \theta_2 = 30^\circ$$

Now the difference between the two lines is $\theta_1 - \theta_2 = 60^\circ - 30^\circ = 30^\circ$

- 8). Find the equation of a line which is equidistant from the lines $x = -2$ and $x = 6$.

Solution: For the equation of line equidistant from both lines, we will find point through which line passes and is equidistant from both line. As any point lying on $x = -2$ line is $(-2, 0)$ and on $x = 6$ is $(6, 0)$, so mid - point is

$$(x, y) = \left(\frac{-2+6}{2}, \frac{0+0}{2} \right)$$

$$(x, y) = (2, 0)$$

So, equation of line is $x = 2$.

- 9). Find the equation of a line passing through the origin and making an angle of 120° with the positive direction of the x - axis.

Solution As angle is given so we have to find slope first give by $m = \tan\theta$, $m = \tan 120^\circ$

$$m = \tan(180^\circ - 60^\circ) = -\tan 60^\circ = -\sqrt{3}$$

($\tan(180^\circ - \theta)$ is in II quadrant, $\tan x$ is negative) Now equation of line passing through origin is given as $y = mx$

$$y = -\sqrt{3}x$$

$$y + \sqrt{3}x = 0 \text{ so the required equation of line is } y + \sqrt{3}x = 0$$

- 10). Find the slope and the equation of the line passing through the points (3, - 2) and (- 5, - 7).

Solution: Slope of equation can be calculated using

$$m = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1} \quad m = 5/8$$

Now using two point formula of the equation of a line

$$y - y_1 = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1} (x - x_1)$$

$$y - (-2) = 5/8 (x - 3) \Rightarrow 8(y + 2) = 5(x - 3) \Rightarrow 5x - 8y - 31 = 0$$

So the required equation of the line is $5x - 8y - 31 = 0$

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS SOLVED

- Q.1. Prove that A (4, 3), B (6, 4), C (5, 6) and D (3, 5) are the angular points of a square.

Solution: Clearly, $AB = \sqrt{(6 - 4)^2 + (4 - 3)^2} = \sqrt{5}$,

$$BC = \sqrt{(6 - 4)^2 + (5 - 4)^2} = \sqrt{5}$$

$$CD = \sqrt{(5 - 6)^2 + (3 - 5)^2} = \sqrt{5}$$

$$\text{and } DA = \sqrt{(5 - 3)^2 + (3 - 4)^2} = \sqrt{5}$$

$$AB = BC = CD = DA$$

$$\text{now, } m_1 = \text{slope of } AB = \frac{4-3}{6-4} = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$m_2 = \text{slope of } BC = \frac{6-4}{5-6} = -2$$

$$m_3 = \text{slope of } CD = \frac{5-6}{3-5} = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$\text{Clearly, } m_1 m_2 = (1/2)(-2) = -1$$

$$\text{and } m_1 = m_2$$

Therefore, AB is perpendicular to CD. Thus, $AB = BC = CA = AD$, AB is perpendicular to BC and AB is parallel to CD.

Hence, ABCD is a square.

- Q. 2. Find the points on the x-axis whose distances from the line $x/3 + y/4 = 1$ are 4 units.

Solution: Given: The equation of the line is $\frac{x}{3} + \frac{y}{4} = 1$

$$4x + 3y = 12$$

$$4x + 3y - 12 = 0 \dots (1)$$

Now, compare equation (1) with the general equation of line $Ax + By + C = 0$,

where $A = 4$, $B = 3$, and $C = -12$

Let $(a, 0)$ be the point on the x-axis whose distance from the given line is 4 units.

So, the perpendicular distance (d) of a line $Ax + By + C = 0$ from a point (x_1, y_1) is given by

$$d = \frac{|Ax_1 + By_1 + C|}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}}$$

$$4 = \frac{|4a + 3 \times 0 - 12|}{\sqrt{4^2 + 3^2}}$$

$$4 = \frac{|4a - 12|}{\sqrt{16 + 9}} = \frac{|4a - 12|}{5}$$

$$|4a - 12| = 4 \times 5 \Rightarrow \pm(4a - 12) = 20$$

$$\Rightarrow a = 8 \text{ or } a = -2$$

$\therefore$ The required points on the x-axis are $(-2, 0)$ and $(8, 0)$

Q.3. Find the equation of the line parallel to y-axis and drawn through the point of intersection of the lines $x - 7y + 5 = 0$ and $3x + y = 0$.

Solution: On the solving equations $x - 7y + 5 = 0$ and $3x + y = 0$, we get $x = \frac{-5}{22}$, $y = \frac{15}{22}$

So, the given lines intersect at the point whose coordinates are $(-5/22, 15/22)$.

We know that, the equation of a line parallel to y-axis is of the form $x = \text{constant}$. So, let the equation of the required line be $x = \lambda \rightarrow (i)$

It passes through $(-5/22, 15/22)$. So, $\frac{-5}{22} = \lambda$

Putting the values of λ in (i), we get $x = -5/22$ or, $22x + 5 = 0$ as the equation of the required line.

Q.4. If p is the length of the perpendicular from the origin on the line whose intercepts on the axes a and b , then show that $\frac{1}{p^2} = \frac{1}{a^2} + \frac{1}{b^2}$.

Solution: The equation of the line which makes intercept a, b on the axes is

$$\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1 \text{ i.e. } \frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} - 1 = 0 \quad \dots(i)$$

Since perpendicular distance of a point (x_1, y_1) from the line

$ax + by + c = 0$ is given by $\left| \frac{ax_1 + by_1 + c}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} \right|$

According to question

$$p = \left| \frac{\frac{0}{a} + \frac{0}{b} - 1}{\sqrt{\frac{1}{a^2} + \frac{1}{b^2}}} \right|$$

$$\text{Implies that } p^2 = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{a^2} + \frac{1}{b^2}} \Rightarrow \frac{1}{p^2} = \frac{1}{a^2} + \frac{1}{b^2}.$$

Q.5 Find equation of the line passing through the point $(3, 4)$ and cutting of intercepts on the axes whose sum is 14.

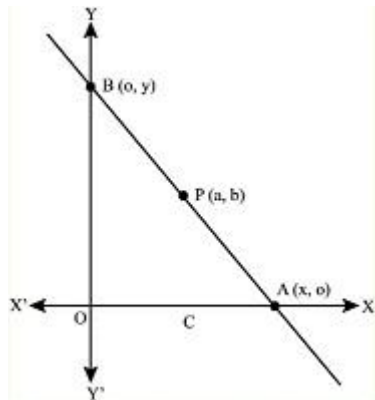
Solution: Let the equation of the line in intercept form be $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1$.

Give that $a + b = 14$ and the line passes through the point $(3, 4)$

$$\therefore \frac{3}{a} + \frac{4}{14-a} = 1$$

Solving above quadratic equation we get $a = 7, 6$ and $b = 7, 8$

Q.6 Let P (a, b) is the mid-point of a line segment between axes. Show that the equation of the line is $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 2$.



Solution:

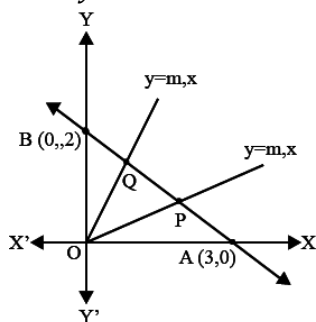
Let P(a, b) is the midpoint of AB where A(x,0) and B(0,y)

Therefore $(\frac{x+0}{2}, \frac{0+y}{2}) = (a, b)$ which gives $x = 2a$ and $y = 2b$

Equation of line passing through (2a,0) and (0,2b) is

$$y - 0 = \frac{2b-0}{0-2a} (x - 2a) \text{ which gives } \frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 2$$

Q.7 Find the equations of the straight lines which pass through the origin and trisect the portion of the straight line $2x + 3y = 6$ which intercepted between the axes.



Solution:

A (3,0) and B (0, 2)

The line $2x + 3y = 6$ trisect by points P and Q

Therefore, $AP=PQ=QB$

P (2,2/3) and Q (1,4/3)

Clearly, P and Q lie on line $y = m_1x$ and $y = m_2x$ respectively.

$$y = \frac{1}{3}x \text{ and } y = \frac{4}{3}x$$

So, $x - 3y = 0$ and $4x - 3y = 0$

Q.8 Points A and B have coordinates (3,2), (7,6) respectively. Find

(i) The equation of right bisector of the segment AB. (ii) The value of p if $(-2, p)$ lies on it.

Solution: (I) the midpoint of AB=(5,4)

So, (slope of AB) (slope of line passes through mid-point of AB) = -1

slope of AB=1, slope of line passes through mid-point of AB=-1

equation of right bisector of AB is $y - 4 = -1(x - 5)$

$$x + y = 9$$

(ii) $(-2, p)$ lies on $x + y = 9$

Therefore $p = 11$

Q.9 Without using the distance formula, show that points $(-2, -1)$, $(4, 0)$, $(3, 3)$ and $(-3, 2)$ are the vertices of a parallelogram.

Solution: Let the given point be A $(-2, -1)$, B $(4, 0)$, C $(3, 3)$ and D $(-3, 2)$

So now, the slope of AB $= (0+1)/(4+2) = 1/6$

The slope of CD $= (3-2)/(3+3) = 1/6$

Hence, the Slope of AB = Slope of CD $\therefore AB \parallel CD$

Now,

The slope of BC $= (3-0)/(3-4) = 3/-1 = -3$

The slope of AD $= (2+1)/(-3+2) = 3/-1 = -3$

Hence, the Slope of BC = Slope of AD $\therefore BC \parallel AD$

Thus, the pair of opposite sides are quadrilateral are parallel, so we can say that ABCD is a parallelogram.

Hence, the given vertices, A $(-2, -1)$, B $(4, 0)$, C $(3, 3)$ and D $(-3, 2)$ are vertices of a parallelogram.

Q. 10. Find the coordinates of the foot of the perpendicular from the point $(-1, 3)$ to the line $3x - 4y - 16 = 0$.

Solution: Let us consider the coordinates of the foot of the perpendicular from $(-1, 3)$ to the line $3x - 4y - 16 = 0$ be (a, b)

So, let the slope of the line joining $(-1, 3)$ and (a, b) be m_1

$$m_1 = (b-3)/(a+1)$$

And let the slope of the line $3x - 4y - 16 = 0$ be m_2

$$y = \frac{3}{4}x - 4 \Rightarrow m_2 = 3/4$$

Since these two lines are perpendicular, $m_1 \times m_2 = -1$

$$(b-3)/(a+1) \times (3/4) = -1 \Rightarrow (3b-9)/(4a+4) = -1$$

$$3b - 9 = -4a - 4 \Rightarrow 4a + 3b = 5 \dots\dots(1)$$

Point (a, b) lies on the line $3x - 4y = 16$

$$3a - 4b = 16 \dots\dots(2)$$

Solving equations (1) and (2), we get

$$a = 68/25 \text{ and } b = -49/25$$

$\therefore$ The coordinates of the foot of perpendicular are $(68/25, -49/25)$

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS WITH SOLUTIONS

Q.1. The mid points of the sides of a triangle are $(2, 1)$, $(-5, 7)$ and $(-5, -5)$. Find the equations of the sides of the triangle.

Solution: Let D $(2, 1)$, E $(-5, 7)$ and F $(-5, -5)$ be the mid points of sides BC, CA and AB respectively of ΔABC .

Slope of AB = Slope of DE

Slope of BC = slope of EF, and Slope of AC = Slope of DF

Let m_1, m_2, m_3 be the slopes of AB, BC and CA respectively.

$$m_1 = \text{Slope of AB} = \text{Slope of DE} = \frac{7-1}{-5-2} = -6/7$$

$$m_2 = \text{Slope of BC} = \text{Slope of EF} = \frac{7+5}{-5+5} = \text{undefined}$$

$$m_3 = \text{Slope of CA} = \text{Slope of DF} = \frac{1+5}{2+5} = 6/7$$

Side AB passes through F (-5, -5) and has slope $m_1 = \frac{-6}{7}$. So,

$$\text{The equation: } y + 5 = \frac{-6}{7}(x + 5) \text{ or } 6x + 7y + 65 = 0$$

Side BC is parallel to Y-axis and passes through D (2, 1). So, its equation is $x = k$. As it passes through (2, 1), $2 = k$

Hence, equation of BC is $x = 2$

Side CA passes through E(-5, 7) and has slope $m_3 = 6/7$.

$$\text{The equation: } y - 7 = \frac{6}{7}(x + 5) \rightarrow 6x - 7y + 79 = 0$$

Q. 2. Assuming that straight lines work as the plane mirror for a point, find the image of the point (1, 2) in the line $x - 3y + 4 = 0$.

Solution: Let Q (h, k) is the image of the point P (1, 2) in the line

$$x - 3y + 4 = 0 \dots (1)$$

$$\text{Hence slope of line PQ} = \frac{-1}{\text{Slope of line } x - 3y + 4 = 0}$$

$$\text{So that } \frac{k-2}{h-1} = \frac{-1}{\frac{1}{3}} \text{ or } 3h + k = 5 \dots (2)$$

Point $\left(\frac{h+1}{2}, \frac{k+2}{2}\right)$ will satisfy the equation (1) so that

$$\frac{h+1}{2} - 3\left(\frac{k+2}{2}\right) + 4 = 0 \text{ or } h - 3k = -3 \dots (3)$$

Hence, the image of point (1, 2) in the line (1) is, $\left(\frac{6}{5}, \frac{7}{5}\right)$

Q.3. Find the distance of the line $4x - y = 0$ from the point P (4, 1) measured along the line making an angle of 135° with the positive x-axis.

Solution: Given line is $4x - y = 0 \dots (1)$.

In order to find the distance of the line (1) from the point P (4, 1) along another line, we have to find the point of intersection of both the lines.

For this purpose, we will first find the equation of the second line Slope of second line is $\tan 135^\circ = -1$.

Equation of the line with slope -1 and the point P (4, 1) is $y - 1 = -1(x - 4)$ or $x + y - 5 = 0 \dots (2)$, Solving (1) and (2), we get $x = 1$ and $y = 4$

distance of line (1) from the point P (4, 1) along the line (2) the distance between the points P (4, 1) and Q (1, 4).

$$PQ = \sqrt{(1-4)^2 + (4-1)^2} = \sqrt{(-3)^2 + (3)^2} = \sqrt{9+9} = 3\sqrt{2}$$

CHAPTER – 10: CONIC SECTION

Definitions and Formulae:

CIRCLES:

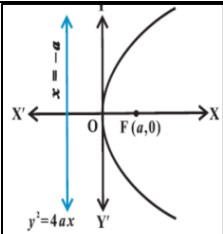
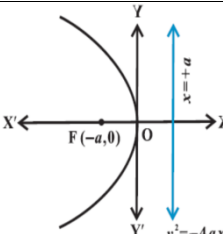
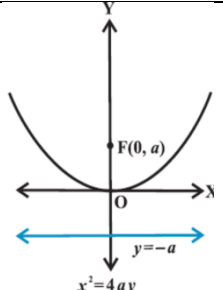
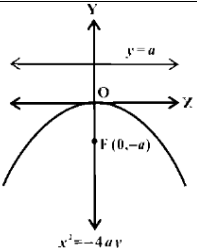
- A circle is a locus of a point which moves in a plane such that its distance from a fixed point in that plane is always constant. The fixed point is said to be the centre of the circle and the constant distance is said to be the radius of the circle.
- The equation of a circle with centre (h, k) and the radius r is given by $(x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 = r^2$.
- The equation of a circle with centre $(0, 0)$ and the radius r is given by $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$.
- General equation of a circle is $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$ whose centre is $(-g, -f)$ and radius is $r = \sqrt{g^2 + f^2 - c}$.

CONICS:

- Conic Section or a conic is the locus of a point which moves in such a way that its distance from a fixed point bears a constant ratio to its distance from a fixed line.
- The fixed point is called the **focus**, the straight line is called the **directrix** and the constant ratio denoted by e is called the **eccentricity of the conics**.
- If $e = 1$, then conic is a parabola.
- If $e < 1$, then conic is an ellipse.
- If $e > 1$, then conic is a hyperbola.
- If $e = 0$, then conic is a circle. (Special case of Ellipse)

PARABOLA:

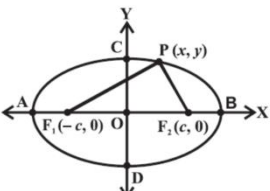
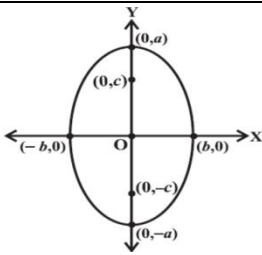
- A parabola is the set of all points in a plane that are equidistant from a fixed line and a fixed point in the plane.

S. No		$y^2 = 4ax$	$y^2 = -4ax$	$x^2 = 4ay$	$x^2 = -4ay$
					
1.	Vertex	$(0, 0)$	$(0, 0)$	$(0, 0)$	$(0, 0)$
2.	Focus	$(a, 0)$	$(-a, 0)$	$(0, a)$	$(0, -a)$
3.	Equation of directrix	$x + a = 0$	$x - a = 0$	$y + a = 0$	$y - a = 0$
4.	Equation of Axis	$(x\text{-axis}), y = 0$	$(x\text{-axis}), y = 0$	$(y\text{-axis}), x = 0$	$(y\text{-axis}), x = 0$
5.	Length of Latus Rectum	$4a$	$4a$	$4a$	$4a$

- Latus rectum of a parabola is a line segment perpendicular to the axis of the parabola, through the focus and whose end points lie on the parabola

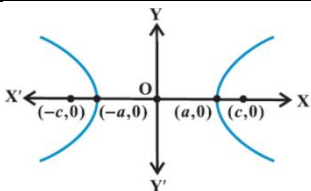
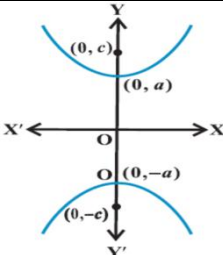
ELLIPSE:

- An ellipse is the set of all points in a plane, the sum of whose distances from two fixed points in the plane is a constant.
- Sum of the distances of the moving point to the foci is equal to length of major axis

S. No			
1.	Equation	$x^2/a^2 + y^2/b^2 = 1, a > b$	$x^2/b^2 + y^2/a^2 = 1, a > b$
2.	Centre	(0, 0)	(0, 0)
3.	Vertices	(± a, 0)	(0, ± a)
4.	Foci	(± ae, 0) or (± c, 0) where $c^2 = a^2 - b^2$	(0 ± ae) or (0 ± c) where $c^2 = a^2 - b^2$
5.	Eccentricity	$e = c/a$	$e = c/a$
6.	Length of major axis	2a	2a
7.	Length of minor axis	2b	2b
8.	Length of latus rectum	$\frac{2b^2}{a}$	$\frac{2b^2}{a}$

HYPERBOLA

- A hyperbola is the set of all points in a plane, the difference of whose distances from two fixed points in the plane is a constant.

S.N			
1	Equation	$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$	$\frac{y^2}{a^2} - \frac{x^2}{b^2} = 1$
2.	Vertices	$(\pm a, 0)$	$(0, \pm a)$
3.	Foci	$(\pm ae, 0)$ or $(\pm c, 0)$ where $c^2 = a^2 + b^2$	$(0 \pm ae)$ or $(0 \pm c)$ where $c^2 = a^2 + b^2$
4.	Eccentricity	$e = c/a$	$e = c/a$
5.	Centre	$(0, 0)$	$(0, 0)$
6.	Length of Transverse axis	$2a$	$2a$
7.	Length of conjugate axis	$2b$	$2b$
8.	Length of latus rectum	$\frac{2b^2}{a}$	$\frac{2b^2}{a}$
9.	Equation of Transverse axis	$y = 0$	$x = 0$
10.	Equation of conjugate axis	$x = 0$	$y = 0$

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS SOLVED

Q. 1) The number of tangents that can be drawn from (1,1) to $x^2 + y^2 = 5$ is

- a) 0 b) 1 c) 2 d) more than 2

Solution: The point (1,1) lies in the interior of the curve $x^2 + y^2 = 5$ which is a circle. So the number of tangents drawn is 0.

Answer: a) 0

Q. 2) The length of the latus rectum of the ellipse $3x^2 + y^2 = 12$ is

- a) 3 b) $\frac{4}{\sqrt{3}}$ c) 4 d) 8

Solution: Comparing with standard equation $\frac{x^2}{b^2} + \frac{y^2}{a^2} = 1$, we get $a = 2\sqrt{3}$ and $b = 2$, using the formula of latus rectum $\frac{2b^2}{a}$ we get $l = \frac{4}{\sqrt{3}}$

Answer: b) $\frac{4}{\sqrt{3}}$

Q.3) The line $2x - y + 4 = 0$ cuts the parabola $y^2 = 8x$ in P and Q. The mid - point of PQ is

- a) (1, - 2) b) (1, 2) c) (- 1, - 2) d) (- 1, 2)

Solution: Solving both the equations $2x - y + 4 = 0$ and $y^2 = 8x$. Using the concept of sum of roots.
mid point = sum of roots / 2

Answer: d) (- 1, 2)

Q.4) If the parabola $y^2 = 4ax$ passes through the point (3, 2), then the length of its latus rectum is

- a) 4 b) $\frac{2}{3}$ c) $\frac{4}{3}$ d) $\frac{1}{3}$

Solution: Putting the value (3,2) in equation of parabola $4a = 4/3$

Answer: c) $\frac{4}{3}$

Q.5) At what point on the parabola $y^2 = 4x$ the normal makes equal angles with the axes?

- a) (4, 4) b) (9, 6) c) (1, - 2) d) (4, - 4)

Solution: c) (1, - 2)

Answer: Normal makes equal angle means slope is 1 or -1. Equating with derivative of $y^2 = 4x$ that is $\frac{dy}{dx}$ it gives co-ordinates of point (1,-2).

Q.6) The length of latus rectum of an ellipse is one - third of its major axis. Its eccentricity would be

- a) $\frac{2}{3}$ b) $\sqrt{\frac{2}{3}}$ c) $\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ d) $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$

Solution: Solving $\frac{2b^2}{a} = \frac{2a}{3}$ we get $a^2 = 3b^2$, $c = \sqrt{2} b$ so $e = \frac{c}{a} = \frac{\sqrt{2} b}{\sqrt{3} b} = \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}}$

Answer: b) $\sqrt{\frac{2}{3}}$

Q.7) Equation of the hyperbola with eccentricity $\frac{3}{2}$ and foci at $(\pm 3, 0)$ is

- a) $\frac{x^2}{9} - \frac{y^2}{9} = \frac{4}{9}$ b) $\frac{x^2}{16} - \frac{y^2}{27} = 1$ c) $\frac{x^2}{4} - \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$ d) $\frac{x^2}{4} - \frac{y^2}{5} = 1$

Solution: Here $a = \pm 2$ and using the formula of e we get $c = 3$ so $b = \sqrt{5}$

Answer: d) $\frac{x^2}{4} - \frac{y^2}{5} = 1$

Q.8) If (2, 4) and (10, 10) are the ends of a latus rectum of an ellipse with eccentricity $\frac{1}{2}$, then the length of semi - major axis is

Solution: Using the distance formula length of latus rectum = 10 units. Comparing with the formula of latus rectum $b^2 = 5a$ and using formula of eccentricity $a = 2c$. Now using the relation between a , b and c we get $a = 0$ or $a = \frac{20}{3}$

Answer: d) $\frac{20}{3}$

Q.9) The slope of the tangent at the point (h, h) of the circle $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$ is

- a) - 2 b) - 1 c) 0 d) Depends upon h

Solution: Slope of the tangent = negative of reciprocal of slope of the line joining origin and (h, h) = -1

Answer: b) - 1

Q.10) The equation $x^2 + y^2 + 2x - 4y + 5 = 0$ represents.

- a) A circle of non - zero radius b) Ellipse
c) A pair of straight lines d) A point

Solution: Here comparing with standard equation $r = 0$ so it's a circle having radius that is a point

Answer: d) A point

ASSERTION - REASON BASED QUESTIONS SOLVED

In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason(R). Pick the correct option:

- a) Both Assertion (A) and Reason(R) are true and Reason(R) is the correct explanation of Assertion (A).
b) Both Assertion (A) and Reason(R) are true but Reason(R) is NOT the correct explanation of Assertion (A).

c) Assertion (A) is true but Reason(R) is false.

d) Assertion (A) is false but Reason(R) is true.

- Q.1 Assertion (A): A line through the focus and perpendicular to the directrix is called the x-axis of the parabola.

Reason (R): The point of intersection of parabola with the axis is called the vertex of the parabola.

Answer: (d) A is false but R is true

Solution: A line through the focus and perpendicular to the directrix is called the axis of the parabola. The point of intersection of parabola with the axis is called the vertex of the parabola. Parabola is symmetric with respect to the axis of the parabola.

- Q2. Assertion(A): If the equation has a term y^2 , then the axis of the symmetry is along the x - axis.

Reason(R): If the equation has a term x^2 , then the axis of symmetry is along the x -axis.

Answer: (c) Assertion (A) is true but Reason (R) is false.

Solution: If the equation has a term x^2 its axis is y-axis.

- Q.3. Assertion(A): The area of the ellipse $2x^2 + 3y^2 = 6$ is more than the area of the circle $x^2 + y^2 - 2x + 4y + 4 = 0$

Reason (R): The length of the semi major axis of an ellipse is more than the radius of the circle.

Answer: b) Both Assertion (A) and Reason(R) are true but Reason(R) is NOT the correct explanation of Assertion (A).

Solution: After finding the value of a, b and r it can be verified that area of ellipse is more than area of circle here. So, Assertion(A) is true and Reason is also correct but not a valid reason of Assertion.

- Q. 4. Assertion(A): The equation $x^2 + y^2 = 4$ represent a circle with centre (0,0) and radius =2 units.

Reason(R): The general equation of the circle is $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$.

Answer: (b) Both Assertion (A) and Reason(R) are true but Reason(R) is NOT the correct explanation of Assertion (A).

Solution: Here the assertion is correct as its centre is (0,0) and radius is 2 units but the reason (R) do not clearly explaining the process to get centre and radius.

- Q.5. Assertion(A): The eccentricity of an ellipse is always less than 1.

Reason(R): The eccentricity of a conic is defined as ratio of c to a ($e = \frac{c}{a}$)

Answer: b) Both Assertion (A) and Reason(R) are true but Reason(R) is NOT the correct explanation of Assertion (A).

Solution: Here A and R both are correct but Reason do not give the correct explanation of A.

- Q.6. Assertion (A): A line through the focus and perpendicular to the directrix is called the x-axis of the parabola.

Reason (R): The point of intersection of parabola with axis is called the vertex of the parabola.

Answer: d) Assertion (A) is false but Reason(R) is true.

Solution: A line through the focus and perpendicular to the directrix is called the axis of the parabola. So, A is false and Reason is correct statement here.

Q. 7. Assertion (A): The foci of the hyperbola $9x^2 - 16y^2 = 144$ is $(+5, 0)$.

Reason (R): The formula to find the foci of a hyperbola is $c^2 = a^2 + b^2$

Answer: (a) Both (A) and (R) are true and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).

Solution: $a=4$, $b=3$ so $c=5$ using formula given in the Reason (R)

Q.8. Assertion (A): The eccentricity of a parabola is 1.

Reason (R): The eccentricity of a circle is greater than 1.

Answer: (c) (A) is true but (R) is false.

Solution: The eccentricity of a parabola is exactly 1. The eccentricity of a circle is 0.

Q. 9. Assertion (A): The eccentricity of a hyperbola is always greater than 1.

Reason (R): The distance between the foci of a hyperbola is always greater than the length of its transverse axis.

Answer: (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A

Solution: In a hyperbola, the eccentricity (e) is defined as the ratio of the distance between the foci to the length of the transverse axis. Since the distance between the foci is always greater than the transverse axis, the eccentricity is always greater than 1.

Q. 10. Assertion(A): One of the farthest points from the centre, lying on the circle $x^2 + y^2 - 25 = 0$ is $(3,4)$.

Reason(R): The point on the circle satisfy the equation of circle and are farthest from the centre of the circle.

Answer: a) Both Assertion (A) and Reason(R) are true and Reason(R) is the correct explanation of Assertion (A).

Solution: The farthest point from the centre is a point on the circle. Here $(3,4)$ satisfy the equation of circle so it lie on the circle.

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS SOLVED

1) **Question:** Find the equation of the circle with radius 4 and Centre $(-2, 3)$.

Solution: Given that:

Radius, $r = 4$, and center $(h, k) = (-2, 3)$.

We know that the equation of a circle with centre (h, k) and radius r is given as

$$(x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 = r^2 \dots (1)$$

Now, substitute the radius and center values in (1), we get

Therefore, the equation of the circle is

$$(x + 2)^2 + (y - 3)^2 = (4)^2$$

$$x^2 + 4x + 4 + y^2 - 6y + 9 = 16$$

Now, simplify the above equation, we get:

$$x^2 + y^2 + 4x - 6y - 3 = 0$$

Thus, the equation of a circle with center $(-2, 3)$ and radius 4 is $x^2 + y^2 + 4x - 6y - 3 = 0$

2) **Question:** What is co-ordinate of the centre and the length of the radius of the circle $2x^2 + 2y^2 - x = 0$.

Solution: Given that, the circle equation is $2x^2 + 2y^2 - x = 0$

This can be written as:

$$\Rightarrow (2x^2 - x) + y^2 = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow 2\left\{x^2 - \left(\frac{x}{2}\right)\right\} + y^2 = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow \{x^2 - 2x(\frac{1}{4}) + (\frac{1}{4})^2\} + y^2 - (y-0)^2 = 0 \quad (\text{Using the completing square method})$$

Now, simplify the above form, we get

$$\Rightarrow (x - \frac{1}{4})^2 + (y-0)^2 = (\frac{1}{4})^2$$

The above equation is of the form $(x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 = r^2$

Therefore, by comparing the general form and the equation obtained, we can say

$h = \frac{1}{4}$, $k = 0$, and $r = \frac{1}{4}$. So the centre $(\frac{1}{4}, 0)$ and radius is $\frac{1}{4}$ unit.

3) **Question:** Determine the coordinates of the focus, the axis of the parabola, the equation of the directrix and the length of latus rectum of the parabola $y^2 = -8x$.

Solution: Given that, the parabola equation is $y^2 = -8x$.

It is noted that the coefficient of x is negative.

Therefore, the parabola opens towards the left.

Now, compare the equation with $y^2 = -4ax$, we obtain

$$-4a = -8$$

$$\Rightarrow a = 2$$

Thus, the value of a is 2.

Therefore, the coordinates of the focus $= (-a, 0) = (-2, 0)$

Since the given equation involves y^2 , the axis of the parabola is the x -axis.

Equation of directrix, $x = a$ i.e., $x = 2$

We know the formula to find the length of a latus rectum

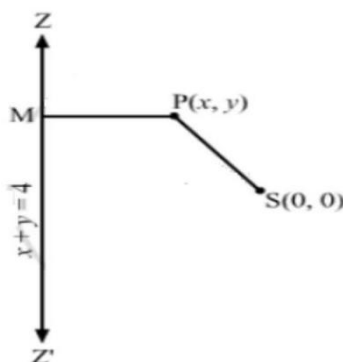
Latus rectum length $= 4a$

Now, substitute $a = 2$, we get

Length of latus rectum $= 8$ units

4) **Question:** Write the equation of the parabola with focus $(0, 0)$ and directrix $x + y - 4 = 0$.

Solution : Let $P(x, y)$ be any point on the parabola whose focus is $S(0,0)$ and the directrix is $x + y = 4$



Now draw PM perpendicular to $x + y = 4$

Therefore, we have: $SP = PM$

$$\Rightarrow SP^2 = PM^2$$

$$\Rightarrow (x - 0)^2 + (y - 0)^2 = \left(\frac{x + y - 4}{\sqrt{1 + 1}} \right)^2$$

$$\Rightarrow x^2 + y^2 = \left(\frac{x + y - 4}{\sqrt{2}} \right)^2$$

$$\Rightarrow 2x^2 + 2y^2 = x^2 + y^2 + 16 + 2xy - 8y - 8x$$

$$\Rightarrow x^2 + y^2 - 2xy + 8x + 8y - 16 = 0$$

This is the required equation of parabola.

5) Question: Find the distance between the directrices of the hyperbola $x^2 - y^2 = 8$

Solution: Given equation of the hyperbola is $x^2 - y^2 = 8$.

$$\Rightarrow \frac{x^2}{(2\sqrt{2})^2} - \frac{y^2}{(2\sqrt{2})^2} = 1, a = 2\sqrt{2}, b = 2\sqrt{2}$$

$$\text{Eccentricity, } e = \frac{\sqrt{a^2+b^2}}{a} = \frac{\sqrt{16}}{2\sqrt{2}} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{2}} = \sqrt{2}$$

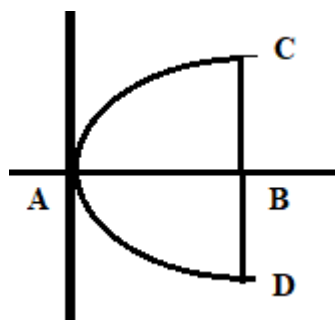
$$\therefore \text{Distance between the directrices} = \frac{2a}{e} = \frac{2 \cdot 2\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{2}} = 4 \text{ units}$$

6) Question: Aarav is standing at a point whose coordinate is (3, 4). Ayansh wants to move in a path such that its distance from Aarav is always 3 units. Find the equation of path followed by Ayansh.

Solution: The path followed by Ayansh will be circle with (3,4) as centre and radius 3 units. Equation of path is $(x-3)^2 + (y-4)^2 = 3^2$

7) Question: Aarini wants to construct a solar parabolic reflector which is 20 cm, wide and 5 cm deep. Find the coordinate of the point at which maximum concentration of sunlight will occur (assuming sunlight travel parallel to the axis of parabolic reflector).

Solution:



AB = 5, CD = 20, COORDINATE OF C(5,10)

Equation of parabola is $y^2 = 4ax$, $(5)^2 = 4a(10) \Rightarrow a = \frac{5}{4}$

sunlight will be maximum at the focus of the parabola i.e. $(a, 0) = (5/4, 0)$

8) Question: A boy made a model in which Earth moves on a path whose equation is $4x^2 + 9y^2 = 36$. Find the possible coordinate of the sun in the model.

Solution: Sun will be at one of the focus

Equation of ellipse $4x^2 + 9y^2 = 36$

Standard form $\frac{x^2}{9} + \frac{y^2}{4} = 1, a^2 = 9, b^2 = 4, a^2 = b^2 + c^2$

$$c^2 = 9 - 4 = 5 \Rightarrow c = \pm\sqrt{5}$$

So possible co-ordinate of sun is $(\pm\sqrt{5}, 0)$

9) Question: Find foci, vertices, eccentricity and length of latus rectum for the hyperbola $x^2/16 - y^2/9 = 1$

Solution: Comparing with standard equation foci $(\pm 5, 0)$, vertices $(\pm 4, 0)$ $e = 5/4$, latus rectum = $9/2$

10) Question: Find the equation of the circle which touches x-axis and whose centre is (1,2).

Solution: Given that, circle with centre (1,2) touches x-axis.

Radius of the circle is, $r = 2$

So, the equation of the required circle is:

$$(x-1)^2 + (y-2)^2 = 2^2$$

$$\Rightarrow x^2 - 2x + 1 + y^2 - 4y + 4 = 4$$

$$\Rightarrow x^2 + y^2 - 2x - 4y + 1 = 0$$

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS SOLVED

1) Question: Determine the foci coordinates, the vertices, the length of the major axis, the minor axis, the eccentricity and the length of the latus rectum of the ellipse $(x^2/49) + (y^2/36) = 1$

Solution: On comparing the equation with standard equation, we will get

$$a = 7 \text{ and } b = 6$$

$$\text{Therefore, } c = \sqrt{a^2 - b^2}$$

$$\text{Now, substitute the value of } a \text{ and } b, \Rightarrow c = \sqrt{13}$$

$$\text{Hence, the foci coordinates are } (\pm \sqrt{13}, 0)$$

$$\text{Eccentricity, } e = c/a = \sqrt{13}/7$$

$$\text{Length of the major axis} = 2a = 2(7) = 14$$

$$\text{Length of the minor axis} = 2b = 2(6) = 12$$

$$\text{The coordinates of the vertices are } (\pm 7, 0)$$

$$\text{Latus rectum Length} = 2b^2/a = 2(6)^2/7 = 72/7$$

2) Question: Determine the equation for the ellipse that satisfies the given conditions: Centre at (0, 0), the major axis on the y-axis and passes through the points (3, 2) and (1, 6).

Solution:

Centre = (0, 0), and major axis that passes through the points (3, 2) and (1, 6).

We know that the equation of the ellipse will be of the form when the centre is at (0, 0) and the major axis is on the y-axis,

$$(x^2/b^2) + (y^2/a^2) = 1 \dots (1)$$

Here, a is the semi-major axis.

It is given that, the ellipse passes through the points (3, 2) and (1, 6).

Hence, equation (1) becomes

$$(9/b^2) + (4/a^2) = 1 \dots (2)$$

$$(1/b^2) + (36/a^2) = 1 \dots (3)$$

Solving equation (2) and (3), we get

$$b^2 = 10 \text{ and } a^2 = 40$$

$$\text{Therefore, the equation of the ellipse becomes: } (x^2/10) + (y^2/40) = 1$$

3) Question: Determine the equation of the hyperbola which satisfies the given conditions: Foci (0, ± 13), the conjugate axis is of length 24.

Solution:

Given that: Foci (0, ± 13), Conjugate axis length = 24

It is noted that the foci are on the y-axis.

Therefore, the equation of the hyperbola is of the form:

$$(y^2/a^2) - (x^2/b^2) = 1 \dots (1)$$

Since the foci are (0, ± 13), we can get

$$c = 13$$

It is given that, the length of the conjugate axis is 24,

$$\text{It becomes } 2b = 24$$

$$b = 24/2$$

$$b = 12$$

And, we know that $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$

To find a, substitute the value of b and c in the above equation:

$$a^2 + 12^2 = 13^2$$

$$a^2 = 169 - 144$$

$$a^2 = 25$$

So the required equation of the hyperbola is $(y^2/25) - (x^2/144) = 1$

4) Question: Show that the set of all points such that the difference of their distances from (4, 0) and (-4, 0) is always equal to 2 represent a hyperbola.

Solution:

$$\sqrt{(x+4)^2 + y^2} - \sqrt{(x-4)^2 + y^2} = 2$$

Solving we will get $\frac{x^2}{1} - \frac{y^2}{15} = 1$ which represent the equation of a hyperbola.

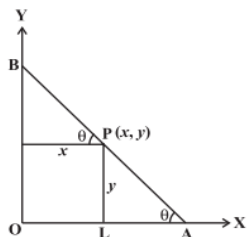
5) Question: If the latus rectum of an ellipse with axis along x-axis and centre at origin is 10, distance between foci = length of minor axis, then find the equation of the ellipse.

Solution:

$$\frac{2b^2}{a} = 10, 2c = 2b \Rightarrow c = b, a^2 = b^2 + c^2 \Rightarrow a^2 = 2b^2$$

$$\frac{a^2}{a} = 10 \Rightarrow a = 10, b^2 = 50, \text{ so equation of ellipse is } \frac{x^2}{100} + \frac{y^2}{50} = 1$$

6) Question: A bar of given length moves with its extremities on two fixed straight lines at right angles. Prove that any point of the bar describes an ellipse.



Solution: Here $y = PA \sin \theta$ and $x = PB \cos \theta$

This gives $\frac{y}{PA} = \sin \theta$ and $\frac{x}{PB} = \cos \theta$

Simplifying we get standard equation of ellipse.

7) Question: If the eccentricity of an ellipse is $5/8$ and the distance between its foci is 10, then find latus rectum of the ellipse.

Solution: Here $a=8$ and $b=\sqrt{39}$ so using the formula of latus rectum we get $\frac{39}{4}$

8) Question: ABCD is a square whose side is a; taking AB and AD as axes, prove that the equation of the circle circumscribing the square is $x^2 + y^2 - a(x + y) = 0$

Solution: We are given that ABCD is a square with side 'a' units.

Let AB and AD represent the x-axis and the y-axis, respectively.

Thus, the coordinates of B and D are (a, 0) and (0, a), respectively.

The endpoints of the diameter of the circle circumscribing the square are B and D.

Therefore, equation of the circle circumscribing the square is $(x-a)(x-0) + (y-0)(y-a) = 0$

or, $x^2 + y^2 - a(x + y) = 0$

9) Question: Find the equation of the ellipse the ends of whose major and minor axes are $(\pm 4, 0)$ and $(0, \pm 3)$ respectively.

Solution: Given that:

End Points of Major Axis = $(\pm 4, 0)$ and End Points of Minor Axis = $(0, \pm 3)$

$\therefore$ The Equation of Ellipse is of the form,

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$$

where, a is the semi-major axis and b is the semi-minor axis.

So, $a = 4$ and $b = 3$

Putting the value of a and b in Eq. (i), we get

$$\frac{x^2}{4^2} + \frac{y^2}{3^2} = 1 \Rightarrow \frac{x^2}{16} + \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$$

10) Question: The circle $x^2 + y^2 - 2x - 2y + 1 = 0$ is rolled along the positive direction of x - axis and makes one complete roll. Find its equation in new - position.

Solution: It is told that the circle is rolled along the positive direction of the x -axis and makes one complete roll.

We know that the complete roll of a circle covers the distance $2\pi r$, where r is the radius of the circle.

The centre of the circle moves $2\pi r$ in the positive direction of the x -axis.

Let the d be the distance moved by the centre on completion of one roll.

$$\begin{aligned} d &= 2\pi r(1) \\ \Rightarrow d &= 2\pi \end{aligned}$$

The new position of the centre is $(1 + d, 1) = \text{Centre} = (1 + 2\pi, 1)$

We know that the equation of the circle with centre (p, q) and having radius ' r ' is given by:

$$(x - p)^2 + (y - q)^2 = r^2$$

Now, Equation of circle with centre $(1 + 2\pi, 1)$ and having radius 1 units.

$$\begin{aligned} \Rightarrow (x - (1 + 2\pi))^2 + (y - 1)^2 &= 1^2 \\ \Rightarrow (x - 1 - 2\pi)^2 + (y - 1)^2 &= 1 \\ \Rightarrow x^2 - (2 + 4\pi)x + (1 + 2\pi)^2 + y^2 - 2y + 1 &= 1 \\ \Rightarrow x^2 + y^2 - (2 + 4\pi)x - 2y - (1 + 2\pi)^2 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

The equations of the circles is $x^2 + y^2 - (2 + 4\pi)x - 2y - (1 + 2\pi)^2 = 0$

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS SOLVED

Q.1. Find the equation of the ellipse whose foci are $(4, 0)$ and $(-4, 0)$, eccentricity = $1/3$.

Solution:

Let the equation of the required ellipse be

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$$

The coordinate of foci are $(+ae, 0)$ and $(-ae, 0)$.

$\therefore ae = 4$ [$\because$ foci $(\pm 4, 0)$]

$$\begin{aligned} \Rightarrow a \times \frac{1}{3} &= 4 \left[\because e = \frac{1}{3} \right] \\ \Rightarrow a &= 12 \end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow a^2 = 144$$

Now, $b^2 = a^2(1 - e^2)$

$$\Rightarrow b^2 = 144 \left[1 - \left(\frac{1}{3} \right)^2 \right]$$

$$\Rightarrow b^2 = 144 \left[1 - \frac{1}{9} \right]$$

$$\Rightarrow b^2 = 144 \times \frac{8}{9}$$

$$\Rightarrow b^2 = 16 \times 8 = 128$$

Substituting, $a^2 = 144$ and $b^2 = 128$ in the above equation of ellipse, we get

$$= \frac{x^2}{144} + \frac{y^2}{128} = 1$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{1}{16} \left[\frac{x^2}{9} + \frac{y^2}{8} \right] = 1$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{x^2}{9} + \frac{y^2}{8} = 16$$

This is the required equation of the ellipse.

Q.2. Find the equation of a circle passing through the points (2, -6), (6, 4) and (-3, 1).

Solution:

Let the equation of the circle passing through the given points be

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots (i)$$

Since, circle passes through the point(2, -6).

So, put $x = 2, y = -6$ in Eq. (i), we get

$$4 + 36 + 4g - 12f + c = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow 4g - 12f + c = -40 \dots\dots(ii)$$

Also, circle passes through the point(6,4).

So, put $x = 6, y = 4$ in Eq. (i), we get

$$36 + 16 + 12g + 8f + c = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow 12g + 8f + c = -52\dots\dots(iii)$$

Also, circle passes through the point (-3,1).

So, put $x = -3$ and $y = 1$ in Eq. (i), we get

$$9 + 1 - 6g + 2f + c = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow -6g + 2f + c = -10\dots\dots(iv)$$

On subtracting Eq. (iii) from Eq. (ii), we get

$$-8g - 20f = 12 \dots (v)$$

On subtracting Eq. (iv) from Eq. (iii), we get

$$18g + 6f = -42 \dots (vi)$$

On solving Eqs. (v) and (vi) for g and f , we get

$$g = -\frac{32}{13}, f = \frac{5}{13}$$

On putting the values of g and f in Eq. (ii), we get

$$c = -\frac{332}{13}$$

Now, on putting $g = -\frac{32}{13}$, $f = \frac{5}{13}$ and $c = -\frac{332}{13}$ in Eq. (i), we get

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 + y^2 - \frac{64}{13}x + \frac{10}{13}y - \frac{332}{13} &= 0 \\ \Rightarrow 13x^2 + 13y^2 - 64x + 10y - 332 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

which is the required equation of circle.

Q.3. Find the equation of the hyperbola, the length of whose latus rectum is 4 and the eccentricity is 3.

Solution:

Given: The length of latus rectum is 4 units, and the eccentricity is 3

Let, the equation of the hyperbola be: $\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$

The length of the latus rectum is 4 units.

$$\Rightarrow \text{length of the latus rectum} = \frac{2b^2}{a} = 4$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{2b^2}{a} = 4 \Rightarrow b^2 = 2a \dots (i)$$

And also given, the eccentricity, $e = 3$

$$\text{We know that, } e = \sqrt{1 + \frac{b^2}{a^2}}$$

$$\Rightarrow \sqrt{1 + \frac{b^2}{a^2}} = 3$$

$$\Rightarrow 1 + \frac{b^2}{a^2} = 9 \text{ [Squaring both sides]}$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{b^2}{a^2} = 8$$

$$\Rightarrow b^2 = 8a^2$$

$$\Rightarrow 2a = 8a^2 \text{ [From (i)]}$$

$$\Rightarrow a = \frac{1}{4} \Rightarrow a^2 = \frac{1}{16}$$

$$\text{From (i)} \Rightarrow b^2 = 2a = 2 \times \frac{1}{4} = \frac{1}{2} \Rightarrow b^2 = \frac{1}{2}$$

So, the equation of the hyperbola is,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} &= 1 \Rightarrow \frac{x^2}{\frac{1}{16}} - \frac{y^2}{\frac{1}{2}} = 1 \\ &\Rightarrow 16x^2 - 2y^2 = 1 \end{aligned}$$

Q.4. Find the equation of a circle concentric with the circle $x^2 + y^2 + 4x + 6y + 11 = 0$ and passing through the point (5, 4).

Solution: Here, the equation of circle is $x^2 + y^2 + 4x + 6y + 11 = 0$

$$\Rightarrow (x^2 + 4x) + (y^2 + 6y) = -11$$

On adding 4 and 9 both sides to make perfect squares, we get

$$(x^2 + 4x + 4) + (y^2 + 6y + 9) = -11 + 4 + 9$$

$$\Rightarrow (x + 2)^2 + (y + 3)^2 = (\sqrt{2})^2 \dots (i)$$

Its centre is $(-2, -3)$

The required circle is concentric with circle 1, therefore its centre is $(-2, -3)$. Since, it passes through $(5, 4)$, therefore radius is $r = CP = \sqrt{(5+2)^2 + (4+3)^2}$ [$\because$ distance $= \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2}$] $= \sqrt{49 + 49} = 7\sqrt{2}$

Hence, the equation of required circle having centre $(-2, -3)$ and radius $7\sqrt{2}$ is,

$$\begin{aligned}(x+2)^2 + (y+3)^2 &= (7\sqrt{2})^2 \\ \Rightarrow x^2 + 4x + 4 + y^2 + 6y + 9 &= 98 \\ \Rightarrow x^2 + 4x + y^2 + 6y - 85 &= 0\end{aligned}$$

Q.5. Find the (i) length of major and minor axes, (ii) coordinates of the vertices, (iii) coordinates of the foci, (iv) eccentricity, and (v) length of the latus rectum of ellipse:

$$\frac{x^2}{25} + \frac{y^2}{9} = 1.$$

Solution: Above equation is of the form $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$

Comparing eq. (i) and (ii), we get

$$a^2 = 25 \text{ and } b^2 = 9 \Rightarrow a = 5 \text{ and } b = 3$$

i). To find: Length of major axes

Clearly, $a > b$, therefore the major axes of the ellipse are along x -axes.

$\therefore$ Length of major axes $= 2a$

Length of major axes $= 2 \times 5$

ii). To find: Coordinates of the Vertices

Clearly, $a > b$

$\therefore$ Coordinate of vertices $= (a, 0)$ and $(-a, 0)$

Coordinate of vertices $= (5, 0)$ and $(-5, 0)$

iii). To find: Coordinates of the foci

We know that,

Coordinates of foci $= (\pm c, 0)$ where $c^2 = a^2 - b^2$

So, firstly we find the value of c : $c^2 = a^2 - b^2 = 25 - 9$, $c^2 = 16$

So foci is $(\pm 4, 0)$

iv) $e = \frac{c}{a} = \frac{4}{5}$

v) The length of the latus rectum is $\frac{2b^2}{a} = \frac{18}{5}$ units

CASE STUDY BASED QUESTIONS SOLVED

1.) Question: Arun is running in a racecourse note that the sum of the distances from the two flag posts from him is always 10 m and the distance between the flag posts is 8m.

1. Path traced by Arun represents which type of curve. Find the length of major axis?
2. Find the equation of the curve traced by Arun?
3. Find the eccentricity of path traced by Arun?



Solution: Arun is running in a racecourse such that the sum of the distances from the two flag posts from him is always 10m and the distance between the flag posts is 8m.

(i) An ellipse is the set of all points in a plane, the sum of whose distances from two fixed points in the plane is a constant. Hence path traced by Arun is ellipse.

Sum of the distances of the moving point to the foci is equal to length of major axis = $10m$

(ii) Given $2a = 10$ & $2c = 8$

$$\Rightarrow a = 5 \text{ \& } c = 4$$

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2$$

$$\Rightarrow 16 = 25 + b^2$$

$$\Rightarrow b^2 = 25 - 16 = 9$$

Equation of ellipse $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$

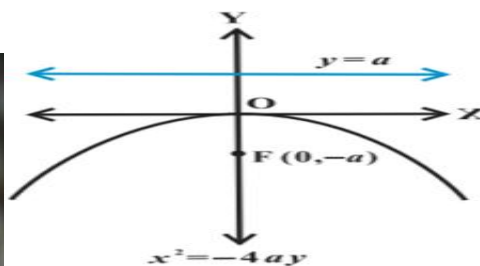
Required equation is $\frac{x^2}{25} + \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$

(iii) equation is of given curve is $\frac{x^2}{25} + \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$

$a = 5, b = 3$ and given $2c = 8$ hence $c = 4$

Eccentricity = $\frac{c}{a} = \frac{4}{5}$

2.) Question: Indian track and field athlete Neeraj Chopra, who competes in the Javelin throw, won a gold medal at Tokyo Olympics. He is the first track and field athlete to win a gold medal for India at the Olympics.



1. Name the shape of path followed by a javelin. If equation of such a curve is given by $x^2 = -16y$, then find the coordinates of foci.
2. Find the equation of directrix and length of latus rectum of parabola $x^2 = -16y$.
3. Find the equation of parabola with Vertex $(0,0)$, passing through $(5,2)$ and symmetric with respect to y -axis and also find equation of directrix.

Solution:

(i) The path traced by Javelin is parabola. A parabola is the set of all points in a plane that are equidistant from a fixed line and a fixed point (not on the line) in the plane.

compare $x^2 = -16y$ with $x^2 = -4ay$

$$\Rightarrow -4a = -16$$

$$\Rightarrow a = 4$$

coordinates of focus for parabola $x^2 = -4ay$ is $(0, -a)$

$\Rightarrow$ coordinates of focus for given parabola is $(0, -4)$

(ii) compare $x^2 = -16y$ with $x^2 = -4ay$

$$\Rightarrow -4a = -16 \Rightarrow a = 4$$

Equation of directrix for parabola $x^2 = -4ay$ is $y = a$

$\Rightarrow$ Equation of directrix for parabola $x^2 = -16y$ is $y = 4$

Length of latus rectum is $4a = 4 \times 4 = 16$

(iii) Equation of parabola with axis along y -axis

$$x^2 = 4ay$$

which passes through $(5, 2)$

$$\Rightarrow 25 = 4a \times 2$$

$$\Rightarrow 4a = \frac{25}{2}$$

hence required equation of parabola is

$$x^2 = \frac{25}{2}y$$

$$\Rightarrow 2x^2 = 25y$$

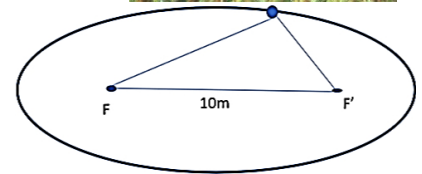
Equation of directrix is $y = -a$. Hence required equation of directrix is $8y + 25 = 0$.

3.) Question: A farmer wishes to install 2 hand pumps in his field for watering.

The farmer moves in the field while watering in such a way that the sum of distances between the farmer and each hand pump is always 26m. Also, the distance between the hand pumps is 10 m.



1. Name the curve traced by farmer and hence find the foci of curve.
2. Find the equation of curve traced by farmer.
3. Find the length of major axis, minor axis and eccentricity of curve along which farmer moves.



Solution: (i) The curve traced by farmer is ellipse. Because, An ellipse is the set of all points in a plane, the sum of whose distances from two fixed points in the plane is a constant.

Two positions of hand pumps are foci Distance between two foci $= 2c = 10$ Hence $c = 5$ Here foci lie on x axis & coordinates of foci $= (\pm c, 0)$

Hence coordinates of foci $= (\pm 5, 0)$

$$(ii) \frac{x^2}{169} + \frac{y^2}{144} = 1$$

Sum of distances from the foci $= 2a$

Sum of distances between the farmer and each hand pump is $= 26 = 2a$

$$\Rightarrow 2a = 26 \Rightarrow a = 13m$$

Distance between the hand pump $= 10m = 2c$

$$\Rightarrow c = 5m$$

$$c^2 = a^2 - b^2$$

$$\Rightarrow 25 = 169 - b^2$$

$$\Rightarrow b^2 = 144$$

$$\text{Equation is } \frac{x^2}{169} + \frac{y^2}{144} = 1$$

(iii) Equation of ellipse is $\frac{x^2}{169} + \frac{y^2}{144} = 1$ comparing with standard equation of ellipse $a = 13, b = 12$ and $c = 5$ (given)

Length of major axis $= 2a = 2 \times 13 = 26$

Length of minor axis $= 2b = 2 \times 12 = 24$

$$\text{Eccentricity } e = \frac{c}{a} = \frac{5}{13}$$

CHAPTER -11: INTRODUCTION TO THREE-DIMENSIONAL GEOMETRY

Definitions and Formulae:

❖ Coordinate Axes and Planes:

Three mutually perpendicular axes: x-axis, y-axis and z-axis.

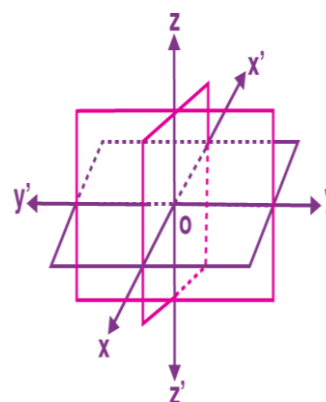
The point where they intersect is called the origin (0, 0, 0).

The three **coordinate planes** are:

XY-plane ($z = 0$)

YZ-plane ($x = 0$)

ZX-plane ($y = 0$)



❖ Coordinates of a Point:

A point in 3D space is represented as (x, y, z).

These are the distances from the **YZ, ZX, and XY planes**

respectively.

❖ An arbitrary point P in three-dimensional space is assigned coordinates (x_0, y_0, z_0) provided that

(1) The plane through P parallel to the YZ - plane intersects the x-axis at ($x_0, 0, 0$);

(2) The plane through P parallel to the XZ - plane intersects the y-axis at ($0, y_0, 0$);

(3) The plane through P parallel to the XY - plane intersects the z-axis at ($0, 0, z_0$).

The space coordinates (x_0, y_0, z_0) are called the Cartesian coordinates of P or simply the rectangular coordinates of P.

❖ Distance Formula in 3D:

Distance between two points A (x_1, y_1, z_1) and B (x_2, y_2, z_2) is

$$AB = \sqrt{\{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 + (z_2 - z_1)^2\}} \text{ OR } \sqrt{\{(x_1 - x_2)^2 + (y_1 - y_2)^2 + (z_1 - z_2)^2\}}$$

❖ The three co-ordinate planes divide the whole space into eight compartments, known as **octants**.

Octant→ Co- Ordinates ↓	I	II	III	IV	V	VI	VII	VIII
	XOYZ	X'OYZ	X'OY'Z	XOY'Z	XOYZ'	X'OYZ'	X'OY'Z'	XOY'Z'
x	+	−	−	+	+	−	−	+
y	+	+	−	−	+	+	−	−
z	+	+	+	+	−	−	−	−

❖ Coordinate Axes

➤ **Definition:** The three mutually perpendicular lines (x-axis, y-axis and z-axis) used to define the position of a point in 3D space.

❖ Coordinate Planes

➤ **Definition:** The planes formed by any two of the three coordinate axes.

XY-plane ($z = 0$)

YZ-plane ($x = 0$)

ZX-plane ($y = 0$)

❖ **Origin**

- Definition: The point of intersection of the x, y and z axes is called Origin and it is denoted by $O(0, 0, 0)$.

❖ **Coordinates of a Point in 3D**

- **Definition:** A point in 3D space is represented as (x, y, z) , where:

x = distance from the YZ-plane

y = distance from the XZ-plane

z = distance from the XY-plane

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS SOLVED

1. What is the distance between the points $A(1, 2, 3)$ and $B(4, 6, 3)$?

a. 5 units b. $\sqrt{20}$ units c. $\sqrt{9}$ units d. $\sqrt{10}$ units

Answer: a. Using distance formula $= \sqrt{\{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 + (z_2 - z_1)^2\}}$

Distance = 5 units

2. The coordinates of a point in 3D are represented as:

a. (x, y) b. (x, y, z) c. (x, y, t) d. (x, z)

Answer: b. (x, y, z)

3. Which of the following is the distance formula between two points $P(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ and $Q(x_2, y_2, z_2)$?

a. $\sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 + (z_2 - z_1)^2}$ b. $\sqrt{[(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 + (z_2 - z_1)^2]}$
c. $(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 + (z_2 - z_1)^2$ d. $\sqrt{[(x_1 + x_2)^2 + (y_1 + y_2)^2 + (z_1 + z_2)^2]}$

Answer: b. $\sqrt{[(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 + (z_2 - z_1)^2]}$

4. The origin in 3D geometry is represented as:

a. $(0, 0)$ b. $(0, 0, 0)$ c. $(1, 1, 1)$ d. none of these

Answer: b. $(0, 0, 0)$

5. Which axis is added in 3D geometry that is not present in 2D geometry?

a. x-axis b. y-axis c. z-axis d. t-axis

Answer: c. z-axis

6. If point A is at $(2, 3, 4)$, then the x-coordinate of A is:

a. 2 b. 3 c. 4 d. 0

Answer: a. 2

7. The coordinates of a point lie in the XZ-plane if:

a. $y = 0$ b. $x = 0$ c. $z = 0$ d. $x = y$

Answer: a. $y = 0$

8. Which plane does the point $(0, 4, 3)$ lie on?

a. XY-plane b. YZ-plane c. XZ-plane d. none of these

Answer: b. YZ-plane

9. In 3D space, the distance of point $P(x, y, z)$ from the origin is:

a. $x + y + z$ b. $x^2 + y^2 + z^2$ c. $\sqrt{(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)}$ d. $(x + y + z)^2$

Answer: c. $\sqrt{(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)}$

10. The point $(3, 0, 0)$ lies on the:

a. origin b. z-axis c. y-axis d. x-axis

Answer: d. x-axis

ASSERTION-REASON BASED QUESTIONS SOLVED

In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R) . Pick the correct option.

Options:

- a). Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
- b). Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- c). A is true, but R is false.
- d). A is false, but R is true.

- 1) **Assertion (A):** The coordinates of a point in space are represented as (x, y, z).

Reason (R): Three mutually perpendicular axes are required to locate a point uniquely in 3D space.

Answer: a. Explanation: With distance from axes in +ve & -ve sense coordinates are determined.

- 2) **Assertion (A):** The distance between two points in 3D space is given by

$$\sqrt{\{(x_2-x_1)^2+(y_2-y_1)^2+(z_2-z_1)^2\}}$$

Reason (R): This formula is derived using the Pythagoras Theorem.

Answer: a. Explanation: Using Pythagoras Theorem. i.e. $p^2+b^2=h^2$ we have formula of distance.

- 3) **Assertion (A):** The coordinates of the origin in 3D space are (0, 0, 0).

Reason (R): Origin is the point where the x-axis and y-axis intersect in 3D.

Answer: c. Explanation: The origin in 3D is where x, y and z axes intersect, not just x and y.

- 4) **Assertion (A):** The point (-2, 3, -3) lies in the seventh octant.

Reason (R): Any arbitrary point of seventh octant have all the coordinate negative.

ANSWER d. Explanation: Since all the coordinates of 7th octant are negative so given point will not lie in 7th octant. Hence A is false.

- 5) **Assertion (A):** Any point on the x-axis in 3D has coordinates of the form (x, 0, 0).

Reason (R): On the x-axis, the y and z coordinates remain constant and equal to 0.

Answer: a. Explanation: On each axes the rest 2 components are 0.

- 6) **Assertion (A):** Point (a+1, a-1, a²-1) lies on y-axis, if a = -1.

Reason (R): For any point (x, y, z) on y-axis, x = 0, z = 0.

Answer: a. Explanation: On each axes the rest 2 components are 0.

- 7) **Assertion (A):** The equation $y^2 - 3y + 2 = 0$ represents planes parallel to XZ-plane in 3 dimensional space.

Reason (R): The equation $y^2 - 3y + 2 = 0$ represents a curve passing through points (0, 1, 0) & (0, 2, 0) in 3 dimensional space.

Answer: d. Explanation: (0, 1, 0) and (0, 2, 0) are the points not planes.

- 8) **Assertion (A):** The point (3, -4, 5) is equidistant from XY-plane and z-axis.

Reason (R): The point (3, -4, 5) is at a distance of 5 units from XY-plane.

Answer: b. Explanation: Distance from XY-plane = |5| = 5 and Distance from z-axis = $\sqrt{(9+16)} = 5$ but R is not an explanation.

- 9) **Assertion (A):** If $a^2 = b^2 + c^2$, then the point P (a, b, c) is equidistant from YZ plane and x-axis.

Reason (R): The sum of the distances of point P (a, b, c) from the coordinate planes is a + b + c.

Answer: b. Explanation: Distance from YZ plane is a & distance from x-axis is $\sqrt{(b^2 + c^2)}$. Here R is a + b + c which is a correct statement but not a correct explanation.

- 10) **Assertion (A):** Vertices of triangle are A (2,0,1), B (1,-1,1), C (2,1,-1). Then side AB is $(2)^{1/2}$.

Reason (R): The distance between the points (x_1, y_1, z_1) and (x_2, y_2, z_2) and is given by:

$$\sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 + (z_2 - z_1)^2}.$$

Answer: a. Explanation: Using distance formula we are able to find side $AB = \sqrt{2}$.

VERY SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS SOLVED

1. Prove by distance formula, that the points A (1, -1,3), B (2, -4,5) and C (5, -13,11) are collinear.

ANSWER- Using Distance formula $\sqrt{\{(x_2-x_1)^2+(y_2-y_1)^2+(z_2-z_1)^2\}}$

$AB=\sqrt{14}, BC = 3\sqrt{14}, AC = 4\sqrt{14}$ $AB+BC=AC$, Therefore collinear.

2. Show that the triangle ABC with vertices A (0,4,1), B (2,3, -1) and C (4,5,0) is right angled.

ANSWER- Using Distance formula $\sqrt{\{(x_2-x_1)^2+(y_2-y_1)^2+(z_2-z_1)^2\}}$

$AB=3, BC=3, AC=\sqrt{18}=3\sqrt{2}$.

$\Rightarrow AB^2 + BC^2 = AC^2$, Therefore by PGT ABC is a right angled triangle.

3. Show that the points A (5, -1,1), B (7, -4,7), C (1, -6,10) and D (-1, -3,4) are vertices of a Rhombus.

ANSWER- By Using Distance formula $\sqrt{\{(x_2-x_1)^2+(y_2-y_1)^2+(z_2-z_1)^2\}}$

$AB = BC = CD = AD = 7, \{AC = \sqrt{122} \text{ \& } BD = \sqrt{74} \text{ i.e. } AC \neq BD. \text{ Not a necessary Condition}\}$

Therefore it's a rhombus.

4. Find the locus of a point whose sum of the distances from the points A (2,0,0) and B (-2,0,0) is 10.

ANSWER- Let P(x,y,z) such that $PA+PB=10$

Using distance formula we have

$\sqrt{\{(x-2)^2+y^2+z^2\}} + \sqrt{\{(x+2)^2+y^2+z^2\}} = 10$ (Shift one term to RHS the square both side $\dots\dots\dots \Rightarrow 21x^2+25y^2+25z^2=525$.)

5. Show that the points A (2, -1,3), B (1, -3,1) and C (0,1,2) are vertices of an isosceles triangle.

ANSWER- Using distance formula $AB=3, BC=3\sqrt{2} \text{ \& } AC=3$ i.e. $AB=AC$

Hence the triangle is an isosceles.

6. Show that the points A (2,3,5), B (-4,7, -7), C (-2,1, -10) and D (4, -3,2) are vertices of a rectangle.

ANSWER- Using distance formula $AB=CD=14, BC=DA=7 \text{ \& } AC=BD=\sqrt{245}$.

Hence a rectangle.

7. Find the locus of a point whose each point is equidistant from A (2,3, -4) and B (-1,2,3).

ANSWER- Let the point be P (x,y,z) such that $PA=PB$, using distance formula

$\sqrt{\{(x-2)^2+(y-3)^2+(z+4)^2\}} = \sqrt{\{(x+1)^2+(y-2)^2+(z-3)^2\}}$. Squaring both sides $\dots\dots\dots \Rightarrow 6x + 2y - 14z - 15 = 0$

8. Prove by distance formula, that the points A (1,2,3), B (-1, -1, -1) and C (3,5,7) are collinear.

ANSWER- Using distance formula $AB=\sqrt{29}, BC=2\sqrt{29} \text{ \& } AC = \sqrt{29} \Rightarrow AB + AC = BC$.

Therefore, given points are collinear.

9. What are the coordinates of the vertices of a cube whose edge is 2 units, one of whose vertices coincide with the origin and the three edges passing through the origin, coincides with the positive direction of the axes through the origin?

ANSWER- The coordinates of the vertices of a cube whose edge is 2 units, one of whose vertices coincides with the origin and the three edges passing through the origin, coincides with the positive direction of the axes through the origin are:

(2,0,0), (2,2,0), (0,2,0), (0,2,2), (0,0,2), (2,0,2), (0,0,0), (2,2,2).

10. If the distance between the points (a,2,1) and (1, -1,1) is 5, then find the values of a?

ANSWER- By distance formula $\sqrt{(a-1)^2 + 9} = 5$ Squaring to get $\Rightarrow a = 5 \text{ or } -3$.

SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS SOLVED

1. Determine point in XY plane equidistant from points A (1, -1,0), B (2,1,2) & C(3,2, -1).

ANSWER- Let a point on XY plane be P(a, b, 0). Then by Using distance formula and taking the condition PA = PB = PC

$$PA = PB \Rightarrow 2a + 4b - 7 = 0$$

$$PB = PC \Rightarrow 2a + 2b - 5 = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow a = 3/2 \text{ \& } b = 1.$$

2. Prove that the triangle formed by joining the three points with coordinates A (1,2,3) B (2,3,1) and C (3,1,2) is an equilateral triangle.

ANSWER- Using distance formula $AB = BC = CA = \sqrt{6}$.

3. Show that the points (0,7,10), (-1,6,6) and (-4,9,6) are the vertices of an isosceles right angled triangle.

ANSWER- Using distance formula $AB = BC = 3\sqrt{2}$, $AC = 6$

$$\text{And } AB^2 + BC^2 = 18 + 18 = 36 = AC^2 \quad \Rightarrow \text{Triangle is isosceles \& right angled.}$$

4. Prove that the points A (1,3,0), B (-5,5,2), C (-9, -1,2) and D (-3, -3,0) taken in order are the vertices of a parallelogram. Also show that ABCD is not a rectangle.

ANSWER- Using distance formula $AB = CD = 2\sqrt{11}$, $AD = BC = 2\sqrt{13} \Rightarrow$ a parallelogram. But $AC = 2\sqrt{30}$ & $BD = 6\sqrt{2} \Rightarrow AC \neq BD$. Therefore it is not a rectangle.

5. Show that the tetrahedron with vertices O (0,0,0), A (0,1,1), B (1,0,1) and C (1,1,0) is a regular one.

ANSWER- Using distance formula $OA = OB = OC = AB = BC = CA = \sqrt{2}$.

Therefore it's a regular tetrahedron.

6. Show that the points A (3,2,2), B (-1,4,2), C (0,5,6), D (2,1,2) lie on a sphere with centre P (1,3,4). Also find its radius?

ANSWER- Using distance formula showing $PA = PB = PC = PD = 3$ units

Therefore points A, B, C & D lie on a circle with centre P and radius = 3 units.

7. Find the coordinates of a point which is equidistant from the four points O (0,0,0), A (2,0,0), B (0,3,0) and C (0,0,8).

ANSWER- Let point P(x, y, z) is equidistant from points O, A, B and C

$$\Rightarrow x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = (x-2)^2 + y^2 + z^2 = x^2 + (y-3)^2 + z^2 = x^2 + y^2 + (z-8)^2$$

$$\Rightarrow x = 1, y = 3/2 \text{ and } z = 4. \text{ Hence Point P } (1, 3/2, 4)$$

8. If A (-2,2,3), B (13, -3,13) are two points, find the locus of a point P which moves in such a way that $3PA = 2PB$.

ANSWER- Let P (x, y, z) such that $(3PA)^2 = (2PB)^2$

$\Rightarrow \dots\dots\dots$

$$\Rightarrow x^2 + y^2 + z^2 + 28x - 12y + 10z = 247$$

9. Determine the point in YZ plane equidistant from the points A (1, -1,0), B (2,1,2) and C (3,2, -1).

ANSWER- Let the point on YZ plane is P (0, y, z) is equidistant from A, B & C.

$$\Rightarrow PA^2 = PB^2 = PC^2 \Rightarrow 2 + 2y = -2y - 4z + 9 = -4y + 2z + 14$$

Using distance formula $y = 31/16$ and $z = -3/16$

Point P(0, 31/16, -3/16)

10. Determine the point in ZX plane equidistant from the points P (1, -1,0), Q (2,1,2) and R (3,2, -1).

ANSWER- Let the point on ZX plane be A(a,0,b) & $AP = BP = CP$.

$$\Rightarrow AP^2 = BP^2 = CP^2 \Rightarrow 2 - 2a = -4a - 4b + 9 = -6a + 2b + 14$$

Using distance formula. $a = 31/10$ $b = 1/5$ So the point will be P (31/10, 0, 1/5)

LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS SOLVED

1. Show that the points P (0,1,2), Q (2, -1,3) and R (1, -3,1) are the vertices of an isosceles right-angled triangle.

ANSWER- $PQ = QR = 3$ & $PR = \sqrt{18}$

$$\text{And } PQ^2 + QR^2 = PR^2$$

$\Rightarrow$ Triangle PQR is a right-angled isosceles triangle.

2. Find the locus of the point which is equidistant from the points A (0,2,3) and B (2, -2,1).

ANSWER- Let P (x, y, z) be equidistant from points A and B.

$$\Rightarrow PA^2 = PB^2 \Rightarrow \text{Using distance formula } \dots\dots$$

$$x - 2y - z + 1 = 0$$

3. Find the coordinates of a point equidistant from the four points O (0,0,0), A(a,0,0), B (0, b,0) and C (0,0, c).

ANSWER- Let point P(x, y, z) is equidistant from O, A, B & C.

$$\text{Using distance formula } \Rightarrow OP^2 = AP^2 = BP^2 = CP^2$$

$$\Rightarrow x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = (x-a)^2 + y^2 + z^2 = x^2 + (y-b)^2 + z^2 = x^2 + y^2 + (z-c)^2$$

$$\Rightarrow x = a/2, y = b/2 \text{ and } z = c/2$$

Hence the point is P (a/2, b/2, c/2)

4. Find the locus of a point whose distance from y-axis is equal to its distance from the point (2,1, -1).

ANSWER- Let point P (x,y,z) be equidistant from y-axis (0,y,0) and the point (2, 1, -1)

$$\text{Using distance formula } x^2 + z^2 = (x-2)^2 + (y-1)^2 + (z+1)^2$$

The **locus** of the point is given by:

$$4x + 2y - y^2 - 2z = 6$$

5. Find the coordinates of a point in YZ plane which is equidistant from three points A (2,0,3), B (0,3,2) and C (0,0,1).

ANSWER- Let the point in YZ plane be P (0, y, z) such that

$$PA^2 = PB^2 = PC^2$$

$$\Rightarrow 4z = 12 \text{ and } 6y + 2z = 12$$

By solving $y=1$ and $z=3$

Therefore the point is $P(0, 1, 3)$

CASE STUDY QUESTIONS SOLVED

1. A drone delivery company uses a coordinate system to map delivery locations. They represent locations in 3D using the Cartesian system. One of the delivery drones is at point

A (2, 3, 5), and the delivery destination is at point B (6, 7, 9).

Using the above informations, answer the following:

- (i) Find the distance a drone has to travel to reach point B from point A.
- (ii) Find the LOCUS of a target (i.e. collection of points) equidistant from A and B.
- (iii). Find the LOCUS of a point whose sum of distances from $P(2,0,0)$ and $Q(-2,0,0)$ is 50 units.

OR

- (iv) Find the LOCUS of a point whose difference of distances from $P(2,0,0)$ and $Q(-2,0,0)$ is 5 units.

Answer:

(i) Distance $AB = \sqrt{4^2 + 4^2 + 4^2} = \sqrt{48} = 4\sqrt{3}$ units

- (ii) Let the coordinates of the TARGET be $P(x, y, z)$ such that $PA = PB$

$$\Rightarrow \sqrt{(x-2)^2 + (y-3)^2 + (z-5)^2} = \sqrt{(x-6)^2 + (y-7)^2 + (z-9)^2}$$

Squaring both sides then Simplifying $x + y + z = 16$

- (iii). Let the coordinates of the point be $P(x, y, z)$ such that $PA + PB = 50$

$$\Rightarrow \sqrt{(x-2)^2 + (y)^2 + (z)^2} + \sqrt{(x+2)^2 + (y)^2 + (z)^2} = 50$$

$$\Rightarrow \sqrt{(x-2)^2 + (y)^2 + (z)^2} = 50 - \sqrt{(x+2)^2 + (y)^2 + (z)^2}$$

Squaring both sides and on simplifying $2500 + 8z = 100 \sqrt{(x+2)^2 + (y)^2 + (z)^2}$

$$\Rightarrow (625)^2 + 4x^2 = 625x^2 + 2500 + 625y^2 + 625z^2 \quad \Rightarrow \quad \frac{x^2}{625} + \frac{y^2}{625} + \frac{z^2}{625} = 1$$

OR

- (iv) Let the coordinates of the point be $P(x, y, z)$ such that $PA - PB = 5$

$$\Rightarrow \sqrt{(x-2)^2 + (y)^2 + (z)^2} - \sqrt{(x+2)^2 + (y)^2 + (z)^2} = 5$$

$$= \sqrt{(x-2)^2 + (y)^2 + (z)^2} = 5 + \sqrt{(x+2)^2 + (y)^2 + (z)^2}$$

$$= \text{Squaring both sides and on simplifying } 625 + 64x^2 + 400x = 100 [(x+2)^2 + (y)^2 + (z)^2]$$

On simplifying $9x^2 + 25y^2 + 25z^2 = 225/4$

2. An engineer is constructing a structure that has its base along the XY-plane and a vertical support that reaches up to point P (4, 6, 10). The base support is fixed at point O(0, 0, 0).

Using the above information, answer the following:

- (i) Find the length of the vertical support (distance OP).
- (ii) Find the distance of point P from origin.
- (iii) Two separate ropes of same length being tied to both the ends are held by a sky diver.

Find the locus of curve being described by the diver.

OR

- (iv) If another support is placed along the line passing for which difference of distances O and P is 10 units, write the locus of the point.

Answer:

(i) Length of the vertical support =

$$\sqrt{(4-0)^2 + (6-0)^2 + (10-0)^2} = 2\sqrt{38} \text{ units}$$

(ii) Distance of P from origin will be = $2\sqrt{38}$ units (using distance formula)

(iii) Let the coordinates of the sky diver be $A(x, y, z)$ such that $PA = OA$

$$\Rightarrow \sqrt{(x-4)^2 + (y-6)^2 + (z-10)^2} = \sqrt{(x)^2 + (y)^2 + (z)^2}$$

On simplifying we get

$$2x + 3y + 5z = 38$$

$$(iv) \sqrt{(x-4)^2 + (y-6)^2 + (z-10)^2} - \sqrt{(x)^2 + (y)^2 + (z)^2} = 10$$

$$\Rightarrow \sqrt{(x-4)^2 + (y-6)^2 + (z-10)^2} = \sqrt{(x)^2 + (y)^2 + (z)^2} + 10$$

On squaring both sides and simplifying we get the answer.

3. A surveillance camera is mounted at point $C(0, -3, 0)$ in a room and it must cover an object placed at $P(0, 3, 0)$. The cable connecting the camera runs along the line joining these two points.

Using the above information, answer the following:

Questions:

(i) Find the distance between camera and the object (that is the distance CP).

(ii) Write the locus of the point along which the cable runs such that point is equidistant from C & P.

OR

(iii). Write the locus of the point along which the cable runs such that the sum of distances from C & P is always 10.

ANSWER

(i) Distance between the camera & the object by distance formula

$$\sqrt{0^2 + (3 - (-3))^2 + (0)^2} = 6$$

(ii) Let the point be $A(x, y, z)$ such that $AC = AP$

$$\sqrt{(x-0)^2 + (y+3)^2 + (z-0)^2} = \sqrt{(x-0)^2 + (y-3)^2 + (z-0)^2}$$

On simplifying Equation is $y=0$

OR

(iii) Let the coordinates of the TARGET be $A(x, y, z)$ such that $PA + CA = 10$

$$\Rightarrow \sqrt{(x-0)^2 + (y+3)^2 + (z)^2} + \sqrt{(x)^2 + (y-3)^2 + (z)^2} = 10$$

$$\text{On simplifying we get } \frac{x^2}{16} + \frac{y^2}{25} + \frac{z^2}{16} = 1$$

CHAPTER 12 – LIMITS AND DERIVATIVES

DEFINITIONS AND FORMULAE

- Limits:**

A limit describes the value a function "approaches" as its input gets arbitrarily close to a specific point, regardless of whether the function actually has that value at that point. Understanding limits is essential for defining continuity and derivatives.

Let $y = f(x)$ be a function of x . If at $x = a$, $f(x)$ takes indeterminate form, then we consider the values of the function which is very near to a . If these values tend to a definite unique number as x tends to a , then the unique number so obtained is called the limit of $f(x)$ at $x = a$ and we write it as $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = f(a)$.

- Derivatives:**

A derivative represents the instantaneous rate of change of a function at a specific point. It can be visualized as the slope of the tangent line to the function's graph at that point. Derivatives are used to analyze how functions change and are fundamental in many scientific and engineering applications.

Suppose f is a real-valued function, then

$$f'(x) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} \text{ is called the derivatives } f \text{ at } x \text{ iff } \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} \text{ exists finitely.}$$

FORMULAS

Limit

Left Hand and Right-Hand Limits

If values of the function at the point which are very near to a on the left tends to a definite unique number as x tends to a , then the unique number so obtained is called the left-hand limit of $f(x)$ at $x = a$, we write it as

$$LHL : \lim_{x \rightarrow a^-} f(x) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} f(a - h)$$

Similarly, right hand limit is

$$RHL : \lim_{x \rightarrow a^+} f(x) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} f(a + h)$$

Existence of Limit

Limit of $f(x)$ exists, if **$LHL = RHL$**

Some Properties of Limits

Let f and g be two functions such that both $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ exists, then

- (i) $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} \{f + g\}(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) + \lim_{x \rightarrow a} g(x)$
- (ii) $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} (kf(x)) = k \lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x)$
- (iii) $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} [f(x) \cdot g(x)] = \lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) \times \lim_{x \rightarrow a} g(x)$
- (iv) $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} \left(\frac{f(x)}{g(x)} \right) = \frac{\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x)}{\lim_{x \rightarrow a} g(x)}$, where $g(x) \neq 0$

Some Standard Limits

- (i) $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{x^n - a^n}{x - a} = na^{n-1}$
- (ii) $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin x}{x} = 1$
- (iii) $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\tan x}{x} = 1$
- (iv) $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{a^x - 1}{x} = \ln a$

$$(v) \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{e^x - 1}{x} = 1$$

$$(vi) \lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{\log(1+x)}{x} = 1$$

Derivatives

Suppose f is a real-valued function, then

$f'(x) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}$ is called the derivatives f at x iff $\frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}$ exists finitely.

Fundamental Derivative Rules of Function

- (i) $\frac{d}{dx} [f(x) + g(x)] = \frac{d}{dx} [f(x)] + \frac{d}{dx} [g(x)]$
- (ii) $\frac{d}{dx} [f(x) - g(x)] = \frac{d}{dx} [f(x)] - \frac{d}{dx} [g(x)]$
- (iii) $\frac{d}{dx} [f(x) \cdot g(x)] = \left[\frac{d}{dx} f(x) \right] \cdot g(x) + f(x) \left[\frac{d}{dx} g(x) \right]$
- (iv) $\frac{d}{dx} \left[\frac{f(x)}{g(x)} \right] = \frac{\left[\frac{d}{dx} f(x) \right] \cdot g(x) - f(x) \left[\frac{d}{dx} g(x) \right]}{[g(x)]^2}$

Some Standard Derivatives

- (i) $\frac{d}{dx} (x^n) = nx^{n-1}$
- (ii) $\frac{d}{dx} (\sin x) = \cos x$
- (iii) $\frac{d}{dx} (\cos x) = -\sin x$
- (iv) $\frac{d}{dx} (\tan x) = \sec^2 x$
- (v) $\frac{d}{dx} (\cot x) = -\operatorname{cosec}^2 x$
- (vi) $\frac{d}{dx} (\sec x) = \sec x \tan x$
- (vii) $\frac{d}{dx} (\operatorname{cosec} x) = -\operatorname{cosec} x \cot x$
- (viii) $\frac{d}{dx} (a^x) = a^x \ln a$
- (ix) $\frac{d}{dx} (e^x) = e^x$
- (x) $\frac{d}{dx} (\log x) = \frac{1}{x}$

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS SOLVED

1. $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{1 - \cos x}{\sin x}$ is equal to:

- (a) 0
- (b) $\frac{2}{3}$
- (c) $\frac{1}{2}$
- (d) 1

ANSWER- (a) $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin^2 x}{\sin x \cdot (1 + \cos x)} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin x}{(1 + \cos x)} = 0$

2. Find the derivative of $\sin^n x$ with respect to x .

- (a) $n \sin^{n-1} x \cdot \sin x$
- (b) $n \cos^{n-1} x \cdot \sin x$
- (c) $(n-1) \sin^n x \cdot \cos x$
- (d) $n \sin^{n-1} x \cdot \cos x$

ANSWER- (d) $n \sin^{n-1} x \cdot \cos x$

3. Evaluate: $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{(x+1)^5 - 1}{x}$

- (a) 2
- (b) 5
- (c) 0
- (d) 1

ANSWER- (b) $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{(x+1)^5 - 1}{(x+1) - 1} = 5$

4. Evaluate: $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{\sin ax}{bx}$

- (a) $\frac{a}{b}$
- (b) $\frac{b}{a}$
- (c) $-\frac{a}{b}$
- (d) 0

ANSWER- (a) $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{\sin ax}{ax} \times \frac{a}{b} = a/b$

5. Evaluate: $\lim_{x \rightarrow \pi} \frac{\sin(\pi - x)}{\pi(\pi - x)}$

- (a) π
- (b) $\frac{1}{\pi}$
- (c) 0
- (d) 1

ANSWER-(b) $1 \times \frac{1}{\pi} = \frac{1}{\pi}$

6. Evaluate: $\lim_{x \rightarrow \frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{\tan 2(\frac{\pi}{2} - x)}{(x - \frac{\pi}{2})}$

(a) - 2

(b) 5

(c) 0

(d) π

ANSWER-(a) $\lim_{x \rightarrow \pi/2} \frac{\tan 2(\frac{\pi}{2} - x)}{-2(\frac{\pi}{2} - x)} \times 2 = -2$

7. Find the derivative of $(\sin x \cdot \cos x)$ with respect to x .

a) $\cos 2x$

(b) $\cos x$

(c) $\sin 2x$

(d) $\sin x$

ANSWER-(a) $\frac{dy}{dx} = \cos x \cdot \cos x - \sin x \cdot \sin x = \cos 2x$

8. Find the derivative of $[x^{-4} \cdot (3 - 4x^{-7})]$ with respect to x .

(a) $12x^{-5} + 44x^{-12}$

(b) $-12x^{-5} + 44x^{12}$

(c) $12x^{-5} + 44x^{12}$

(d) $-12x^{-5} + 44x^{-12}$

ANSWER- (d) $\frac{dy}{dx} = -12x^{-5} + 44x^{-12}$

9. Find the derivative of $(\tan x - \sec x)$ with respect to x .

(a) $\sec^2 x + \sec x \tan x$

(b) $\sec^2 x - \sec x \cot x$

(c) $\sec^2 x - \sec x \tan x$

(d) $\sec x - \sec x \tan x$

ANSWER- 9(c) $\frac{dy}{dx} = \sec^2 x - \sec x \tan x$

10. Find the derivative of $(5 \sin x - 7 \sec x)$ with respect to x .

a) $5 \cos x - 7 \sec x$

(b) $7 \cos x - 5 \sec x$

(c) $5 \cos x + 7 \sec x \tan x$

(d) $5 \cos x - 7 \sec x \tan x$

ANSWER-10 (d) $\frac{dy}{dx} = 5 \cos x - 7 \sec x \tan x$

ASSERTION-REASON BASED QUESTIONS SOLVED

In the following questions , a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R) . Pick the correct option.

Options:

- Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
- Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- A is true, but R is false.
- A is false, but R is true.

1.Assertion(A): $f(x) = \sin^2 x + \frac{1}{2} \cos 2x + \cot x$, then $f'(x) = 0$

Reason(R): Derivative of a constant function is always zero.

ANSWER-(d) $f(x) = \sin^2 x + \frac{1}{2} \cos 2x + \cot x$, $f'(x) = 0$

2.Assertion(A): The derivative of $y = 2x - \frac{3}{4}$ w.r.t. x is 2.

Reason(R): The derivative of $y = cx$ w.r.t. x is c .

ANSWER-(a) $\frac{dy}{dx} = c$

3. Assertion(A): The derivative of $f(x) = x^3$ w.r.t. x is $3x^2$.

Reason(R): The derivative of $f(x) = x^n$ w.r.t. x is x^{n-1} .

ANSWER-(c) As $\frac{d}{dx}(x^n) = nx^{n-1}$

4. Assertion(A): $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin ax}{bx}$ is equal to $\frac{a}{b}$.

Reason(R): $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin x}{x} = 1$.

ANSWER- (a) $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin ax}{ax} \times \frac{a}{b}$

5. Assertion(A) : $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\cos 2x - 1}{\cos x - 1}$ is equal to 4.

Reason(R): $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\tan x}{x} = 1$

ANSWER-(b) , A takes help of $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin x}{x} = 1$

6. Assertion(A) : $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\tan x^0}{x} = 1$.

Reason(R): $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\tan x}{x} = 1$

ANSWER-(d) $\tan x \neq \tan x^0$

7. Assertion(A) : $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\tan x}{x} = 1$.

Reason(R): $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin x}{x} = 1$

ANSWER-(a) $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\tan x}{x} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin x}{x} \times \frac{1}{\cos x}$

8. Assertion(A) : $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sqrt{1 - \cos 2x}}{x} = \sqrt{2} \sin x$

Reason(R): $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin x}{x} = 1$

ANSWER-(a) $\sqrt{1 - \cos 2x} = \sqrt{2} \sin x$

9. Assertion(A) $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\ln(1+|x|)}{x} = 1$

Reason(R): R: $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{|x|}{x}$ = doesn't exist

ANSWER-(d) as $|x| = \pm x$

10. Assertion(A) : $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} x \sin \frac{1}{x} = 0$.

Reason(R): $\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} x \sin \frac{1}{x} = 1$

ANSWER-(c) as stands for $\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} x \sin \frac{1}{x} = 1 \times \sin 1 \neq 1$

VERY SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS SOLVED

1. Find the derivative of $\frac{1}{x}$ with respect to x.

ANSWER - $\frac{d}{dx} (1/x) = \frac{d}{dx}(x^{-1}) = -x^{-2} = -1/x^2$

2. Find the derivative of $x^3 - 3$ w. r.t. x at $x = 10$.

ANSWER- $\frac{dy}{dx} = 3x^2$, at $x = 10$, $\frac{dy}{dx} = 300$

3. Find the derivative of $(5 \sec x + 7 \cos x)$ with respect to x.

ANSWER- $\frac{dy}{dx} = 5\sec x \cdot \tan x - 7\sin x$

4. Find $f'(x)$, where $f(x) = |x| - 5$, $x \neq 0$

ANSWER- $f(x) = \pm x - 5$, $f'(x) = \pm 1$

5. Evaluate : $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \frac{ax+b}{cx+1}$

ANSWER- $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \frac{a+b/x}{c+1/x} = a/c$

6. If the function $f(x)$ satisfies $\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} \frac{f(x)-2}{x^2-1} = \pi$. Evaluate: $\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} f(x)$

ANSWER- As limit exists & Dr is 0 at $x \rightarrow 1$, so Nr is 0 at $x \rightarrow 1$, that is $f(x) = 2$

7. Find the derivative of $(x^3 + x^2 + 3)(x - 5)$ with respect to x .

ANSWER- Derivative is $(x^3 + x^2 + 3) + (3x^2 + 2x)(x - 5)$

8. For the function $f(x) = \frac{x^{100}}{100} + \frac{x^{99}}{99} + \dots + \frac{x^2}{2} + x + 1$. Prove that: $f'(1) = 100 f'(0)$.

ANSWER- $f'(0) = 1$ & $f'(1) = 100 = 100 f'(0)$.

9. Evaluate $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\cos 2x - 1}{\cos x - 1}$

ANSWER- $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{2(\cos^2 x - 1)}{\cos x - 1} = 4$

10. Evaluate $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin ax}{\tan bx}$

ANSWER - $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin ax}{\tan bx} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin ax}{ax} \cdot X \frac{bx}{\tan bx} \cdot X \frac{a}{b} = a/b$

SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS SOLVED

1. Evaluate : $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{(1 - \cos 2x) \sin 5x}{x^2 \sin 3x}$

ANSWER- $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{(2 \sin^2 x) \sin 5x}{x^2 \sin 3x} = 2 \times 5/3 = 10/3$

2. Evaluate : $\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} \frac{\sin \pi x}{x-1}$

ANSWER: $\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} \frac{\sin(\pi - \pi x)}{x-1} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 1} \frac{\sin(\pi - \pi x)}{x-1} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 1} -\pi \frac{\sin -\pi(x-1)}{-\pi(x-1)} = -\pi$

3. Evaluate : $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \frac{(x+2)! + (x+1)!}{(x+2)! - (x+1)!}$

ANSWER- : $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \frac{(x+3)(x+1)!}{(x+1)(x+1)!} = \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \frac{(x+3)}{(x+1)} = 1$

4. Evaluate : $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left\{ \frac{1+2+3+\dots+n}{n+2} - \frac{n}{2} \right\}$

ANSWER- $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left\{ \frac{n(n+1)}{2(n+2)} - \frac{n}{2} \right\} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} -\frac{n}{(n+2)} = -1$

5. Evaluate : $\lim_{x \rightarrow \pi/2} \frac{1 - \sin x}{(\frac{\pi}{2} - x) \cos x}$

$$\text{ANSWER-} \lim_{x \rightarrow \pi/2} \frac{1 - \cos(\pi/2 - x)}{(\frac{\pi}{2} - x) \sin(\frac{\pi}{2} - x)} = 1/2$$

6. If $f(x) = x^{100} + x^{99} + \dots + x + 1$, then $f'(1)$

$$\text{ANSWER- } f'(x) = 100x^{99} + 99x^{98} + \dots + 2x + 1, f'(1) = 100 + 99 + \dots + 2 + 1 = 100 \times 101/2$$

7. If $f(x) = 1 + \frac{x}{1!} + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \dots$ then prove that $f'(x) = f(x)$.

$$\text{ANSWER- } f'(x) = 1 + \frac{x}{1!} + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \dots = f(x)$$

8. If $f(x) = x^{100} - x^{99} + \dots - x + 1$, then $f'(1)$

$$\text{ANSWER- } f'(1) = 100 - 99 + 98 - 97 \dots$$

9. If $y = \frac{\sin x + \cos x}{\sin x - \cos x}$, then find $\frac{dy}{dx}$ at $x = 0$.

$$\text{ANSWER- } \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{-(\sin x - \cos x)^2 - (\sin x + \cos x)^2}{(\sin x - \cos x)^2}, \text{ At } x = 0, dy/dx = \dots = -2$$

10. If $y = \sqrt{x} + 1/\sqrt{x}$, then find dy/dx at $x = 1$

$$\text{ANSWER- } dy/dx = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}} - \frac{1}{2} x^{-3/2}, \text{ at } x = 1, dy/dx = 1/2 - 1/2 = 0$$

LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS SOLVED

1. Find derivative of $f(x) = \frac{x+1}{x+2}$, Using 1ST principle.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{ANSWER- } f'(x) &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{\frac{x+h+1}{x+h+2} - \frac{x+1}{x+2}}{h} \\ &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{h}{(x+h+2)(x+2)h} = -1/(x+2)^2 \end{aligned}$$

2. Evaluate : $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{(x+h)^2 \sin(x+h) - x^2 \sin x}{h}$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{ANSWER- } \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{(x+h)^2 \sin(x+h) - x^2 \sin x}{h} \\ &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{x^2 \sin(x+h) - x^2 \sin x}{h} + \frac{(2xh + h^2) \sin(x+h)}{h} \\ &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{x^2 (\sin(x+h) - \sin x)}{h} + \frac{h(2x+h) \sin(x+h)}{h} \\ &= x^2 \cos x + 2x \sin x \end{aligned}$$

3. Evaluate $\lim_{y \rightarrow 0} \frac{(x+y) \sec(x+y) - x \sec x}{h}$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{ANSWER- } \lim_{y \rightarrow 0} \frac{(x+y) \sec(x+y) - x \sec x}{h} \\ &= \lim_{y \rightarrow 0} \frac{x \sec(x+y) - x \sec x}{h} + \frac{y \sec(x+y)}{y} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \lim_{y \rightarrow 0} \frac{x(\sec(x+y) - \sec x)}{h} + \sec(x+y) \\
&= \lim_{y \rightarrow 0} \frac{x\left(\frac{1}{\cos(x+y)} - \frac{1}{\cos x}\right)}{h} + \sec(x+y) \\
&= \lim_{y \rightarrow 0} \frac{x(\cos x - \cos(x+y))}{y \cos x \cdot \cos(x+y)} + \sec(x+y) \\
&= x \sec x \cdot \tan x + \sec x
\end{aligned}$$

4. Find derivative of $f(x) = x \log x$, Using 1st principle.

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{ANSWER- } f'(x) &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} \\
&= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{(x+h) \log(x+h) - x \log x}{h} \\
&= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{(x) \log(x+h) - x \log x}{h} + \frac{h \log(x+h)}{h} \\
&= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{x(\log(x+h) - \log x)}{h} + \log(x+h) = x \cdot \frac{1}{x} + \log x = 1 + \log x
\end{aligned}$$

5. Differentiate $f(x) = (x \sin x + \cos x)(x \cos x - \sin x)$ with respect to x

ANSWER-

$$\begin{aligned}
f'(x) &= (x \cos x - \sin x) \frac{d}{dx} (x \sin x + \cos x) + (x \sin x + \cos x) \frac{d}{dx} (x \cos x - \sin x) \\
&= (x \cos x - \sin x) \cdot (x \cos x + \sin x - \sin x) + (x \sin x + \cos x) (\cos x - x \sin x - \cos x) \\
&= x^2 (\cos^2 x - \sin^2 x) - x (2 \sin x \cdot \cos x) \\
&= x^2 \cos 2x - x \sin 2x
\end{aligned}$$

CASE BASED QUESTIONS SOLVED

Question.1

Mahesh was learning limit of a polynomial function from his teacher Mr. Nanda.

Now let $f(x) = a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + a_nx^n$ be a polynomial function, where all a_i 's are real numbers and $a_n \neq 0$.

Then limit of the polynomial function

$$\begin{aligned}
&\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) \\
&= \lim_{x \rightarrow a} a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + a_nx^n
\end{aligned}$$

$$= a_0 + a_1 a + a_2 a^2 + \dots + a_{n-1} a^{n-1} + a_n a^n$$

$$= f(a).$$

Based on above information evaluate the following

(i) $\lim_{x \rightarrow -1} 1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + \dots + x^8 + x^9$

(ii) $\lim_{x \rightarrow 5} x^2(x-1)$

(iii) $\lim_{x \rightarrow 2} (x^3 + x^2 + x - 1)$

(iv) $\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} \frac{x^4 - 1}{x - 1}$

OR $\lim_{x \rightarrow -1} \frac{x^3 + 1}{x + 1}$

ANSWER:-

(i) $1 + (-1) + (-1)^2 + (-1)^3 + \dots + (-1)^8 + (-1)^9 = 1 - 1 + 1 - 1 + \dots - 1 = 0$

(ii) $5^2(5-1) = 20$

(iii) $2^3 + 2^2 + 2 - 1 = 13$

(iv) $\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} \frac{(x^2+1)(x+1)(x-1)}{x-1} = (1+1)(1+1) = 4$

OR

(iv) $\lim_{x \rightarrow -1} \frac{x^3 - (-1)^3}{x - (-1)} = \lim_{x \rightarrow -1} \frac{x^3 + 1}{x + 1} = \lim_{x \rightarrow -1} \frac{(x^2 - x + 1)(x + 1)}{(x + 1)} = 1 + 1 + 1 = 3$

Question.2

The great Swiss mathematician Leonard Euler introduced the number 'e' whose value lies between 2 and 3. This number is useful in defining exponential function, a function of the form $f(x) = e^x$ is called exponential function. The graph of the function is given here.

Domain $(-\infty, \infty)$

Range $(0, \infty)$

To find the limit of function involving exponential function we use the following Theorem.

Theorem: $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{e^x - 1}{x} = 1.$

Based on above information find the limits:

(i) $\lim_{x \rightarrow 4} \frac{e^x - e^4}{x - 4}$

(ii) $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{e^{kx} - 1}{x}$

(iii) $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{e^{-x} - 1}{x}$

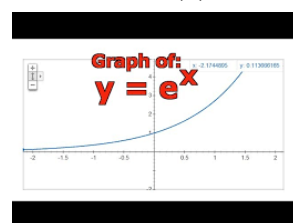
(iv) $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{e^{5x} - e^{4x}}{x}$

OR

$\lim_{x \rightarrow 2} \frac{e^x - e^2}{x^2 - 4}$

ANSWER:

2(i) $\lim_{x \rightarrow 4} \frac{e^4(e^{x-4} - 1)}{x - 4} = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{e^4(e^h - 1)}{h} = e^4$



$$(ii) \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{(e^{kx}-1)}{kx} \times k = k$$

$$(iii) \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{(e^{-x}-1)}{-x} \times (-1) = -1$$

$$(iv) \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{e^{4x}(e^x-1)}{x} = e^0 \cdot 1 = 1$$

OR

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 2} \frac{e^2(e^{x-2}-1)}{(x-2)(x+2)} = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{e^2(e^h-1)}{h} \times \frac{1}{4} = \frac{e^2}{4}.$$

Question. 3 | Bridge Cable Shape

The sag $y(x)$ (in m) of a suspension bridge cable at horizontal distance x (m) from one tower is modelled near mid-span as

$$y(x) = 0.002x^2 - 0.3x + 10, \quad 0 \leq x \leq 150$$

(i) Find the slope of the cable 40 m from the tower.

(ii) Lowest Point

$$\text{Answer: i) } y'(x) = 0.004x - 0.3$$

$$\Rightarrow y'(40) = 0.004(40) - 0.3 = 0.16 - 0.3 = -0.14$$

So the cable is descending at 0.14 m per horizontal metre at $x = 40$ m.

(ii) $y'(x) = 0.004x - 0.3 = 0$: $x = 75$.

Thus the cable's vertex is 75 m from the tower, consistent with symmetry

Question 4 | Population Growth Check

A town's population (in thousands) after year 2000 is

$$P(t) = 50(1 + 1/t)^t, \quad t > 0$$

(i) Estimate the long-term population limit as $t \rightarrow \infty$

(ii) Find the instantaneous change of $Q(t) = \log P(t)$ after 1 year.

Answer:

$$(i) \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} (1 + \frac{1}{t})^t = e. \text{ Therefore}$$

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} P(t) = 50e = 135.9 \text{ thousand approx..}$$

$$(ii) Q(t) = \log P(t) = t \log\left(\frac{t+1}{t}\right) + \log 50$$

$$Q'(t) = \log\left(\frac{t+1}{t}\right) - \frac{1}{t+1}$$

$$Q'(1) = \log 2 - \frac{1}{2}$$

5. A drone's vertical position (metres) after t seconds is $s(t) = 5t^2 - 40t + 120$,

(i) Find the instantaneous speed when time = t sec.

(ii) The package must be released when the drone's speed is zero. At what time does that happen?

(iii) Also find the acceleration at $t = 5$ and check whether it is accelerating or retarding?

Answer:

$$1.(i) \quad s'(t) = 10t - 40$$

$$(ii) \quad s'(t) = 10t - 40 = 0, \quad \text{then } t = 4$$

$$(iii) \quad s''(t) = 10, \text{ then } s''(5) = 10 > 0, \text{ which means the drone is accelerating.}$$

Takeaway: Instantaneous speed is the derivative of position; a zero derivative marks a rest point. positive double derivative means acceleration.

CHAPTER 13 - STATISTICS

DEFINITIONS AND FORMULAE

**** Median** = $\left(\frac{n+1}{2}\right)^{\text{th}}$ observations (arranged in ascending or descending order) & the number of observations is odd.

= mean of $\left(\frac{n}{2}\right)^{\text{th}}$ & $\left(\frac{n}{2}+1\right)^{\text{th}}$ observations (arranged in ascending or descending order) & the number of observations is odd.

$$= l + \left(\frac{\frac{n}{2} - cf}{f} \right) \times h \text{ where, } l = \text{lower limit of median class, } n = \text{number of observations,}$$

cf = cumulative frequency of class preceding the median class, f = frequency of median class, h = class size.

$$\textbf{** Mode} = l + \left(\frac{f_1 - f_0}{2f_1 - f_0 - f_2} \right) \times h, \text{ where } l = \text{lower limit of the modal class, } h = \text{size of the class interval,}$$

f_1 = frequency of the modal class, f_0 = frequency of the class preceding the modal class,

f_2 = frequency of the class succeeding the modal class.

**** Measures of Dispersion:** The dispersion or scatter in a data is measured on the basis of the observations and the types of the measure of central tendency, used there. There are following measures of dispersion:

(i) Range, (ii) Quartile deviation, (iii) Mean deviation, (iv) Standard deviation.

**** Range:** Range of a series = Maximum value – Minimum value.

**** Mean Deviation :** The mean deviation about a central value 'a' is the mean of the absolute values of the deviations of the observations from 'a'. The mean deviation from 'a' is denoted as M.D. (a).

(i) For ungrouped data

$$\text{M.D.}(\bar{x}) = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n |x_i - \bar{x}|, \text{ where } \bar{x} = \text{Mean}$$

$$\text{M.D.}(M) = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n |x_i - M|, \text{ where } M = \text{Median}$$

(ii) For grouped data

(a) Discrete frequency distribution

$$\text{M.D.}(\bar{x}) = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n f_i |x_i - \bar{x}|}{\sum_{i=1}^n f_i} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^n f_i |x_i - \bar{x}|$$

$$\text{M.D.}(M) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^n f_i |x_i - M|$$

(b) Continuous frequency distribution

$$\text{M.D.}(\bar{x}) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^n f_i |x_i - \bar{x}|, \text{ using } \bar{x} = a + \left(\frac{\sum f_i u_i}{\sum f_i} \right) h$$

$$\text{M.D.}(M) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^n f_i |x_i - M|, \text{ using } M = l + \left(\frac{\frac{n}{2} - cf}{f} \right) \times h$$

**** Variance:** It is the mean of sum of squares of the deviations from the arithmetic mean of the deviation.

(a) For ungrouped data : $\text{Var}(X) = \sigma^2 = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - \bar{x})^2 = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 - \left(\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \right)^2$

(b) For grouped data: $\sigma^2 = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^n f_i (x_i - \bar{x})^2 = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^n f_i x_i^2 - \left(\frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^n f_i x_i \right)^2$

(c) Short-cut Method: $\sigma^2 = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^n f_i (x_i - \bar{x})^2 = \frac{h^2}{N^2} \sum_{i=1}^n [N f_i y_i^2 - \left(\sum_{i=1}^n f_i y_i \right)^2]$ where $y_i = \frac{x_i - \bar{x}}{h}$

**** Standard Deviation:** It is the positive square root of variance

$$\text{S. D.} = \sqrt{\text{Variance}} = \sigma$$

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS (SOLVED)

Q.1 The range for the following data is

Marks less than	10	20	30	40	50	60	70
No of students	0	4	7	10	14	18	20

(a) 50 marks (b) 40 marks (c) 20 marks (d) 60 marks

Solution: (b) $70 - 10 = 60$ marks

Q.2 In a college of 300 students every student reads 5 newspapers and every newspaper read by 60 students. The number of news paper is

(a) at least 30 (b) at most 20 (c) exactly 25 (d) None of these

Solution: Let the number of news papers which are read be n.

Now according to given question ,

$$60n = 300 \times 5$$

$n = 25$ so correct answer is (c)

Q.3 The mean and median of the following ten numbers in increasing order

10, 22, 26, 29, 34, x, 42, 67, 70, y are 42 and 35 respectively then $\frac{y}{x}$ is equal to

(a) $\frac{7}{3}$ (b) $\frac{7}{2}$ (c) $\frac{8}{3}$ (d) $\frac{9}{4}$

Solution: (a) median = 35 $\Rightarrow \frac{34+x}{2} = 35 \Rightarrow x = 36$ and

$$\text{Mean} = 42 \Rightarrow \frac{300+x+y}{10} = 42 \Rightarrow x + y = 120 \Rightarrow y = 84, \text{ Therefore } \frac{y}{x} = \frac{7}{3}$$

Q.4 Mean deviation from mean of the following data ; 4,7,8,9,10,12,13,17 is

(a) 2 (b) 3 (c) 4 (d) 5

Solution: (b) Explanation : mean = $\frac{80}{8} = 10 \Rightarrow MD = \frac{6+3+2+1+0+2+3+7}{8} \Rightarrow MD = \frac{24}{8} = 3$

Q.5 If the mean of 1,3,4,5,7 is m , the numbers 3,2,2,4,3,3, p have mean $(m - 1)$ and median q then $(p + q)$ is

- (a) 4 (b) 5 (c) 6 (d) 7

Solution: (d) Explanation : $m = \frac{20}{5} \Rightarrow m = 4$

And $\frac{17+p}{7} = (4 - 1) \Rightarrow p = 4$ & median of 2,2,3,3,3,3,4 is $q = 3$ thus $p + q = 7$

Q.6. consider any set of 201 observations $x_1 < x_2 < x_3 < x_4 < \dots < x_{201}$. Then the mean deviation of this set of observations about a point K is minimum, when K equals

- (a) $\frac{x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + \dots + x_{201}}{201}$ (b) x_1 (c) x_{101} (d) x_{201}

Solution: (c) Explanation:- Given that, $x_1 < x_2 < x_3 < x_4 < \dots < x_{200} < x_{201}$.

Median = $\frac{(201+1)}{2} = 101^{th} \text{ term} \Rightarrow md = x_{101}$, as we know that deviation will be minimum from the median so $K = x_{101}$

Q7. The standard deviation of 17 numbers is zero. Then

- (a) The numbers in geometric progression with common ratio not equal one.
(b) eight numbers are positive, eight numbers are negative and one is zero.
(c) either (a) or (b) (d) None of these.

Solution: (d) Explanation: If S.D. is zero then all 17 numbers must be same. So (a) and (b) can not be true.

Q8. The variance of 2,4,6,8,10 is

- a) 8 (b) $\sqrt{8}$ (c) 6 (d) None of these

Solution: (a) Explanation mean = $\frac{30}{5} \Rightarrow \text{mean} = 6$

There fore Variance = $\frac{16+4+0+4+16}{5} \Rightarrow \sigma^2 = 8$

Q9. If each observation of a distribution whose S.D. is σ , is increased by μ then the variance of the new observation is

- (a) σ (b) $\sigma + \mu$ (c) σ^2 (d) $\sigma^2 + \mu$

Solution: (c) Explanation: Mean of distribution is also increased by σ therefore SD remains unchanged,

Q10. If each observation of a distribution whose variance is σ^2 , is multiplied by K then the S.D. of new observation is

- (a) σ (b) $K\sigma$ (c) $|K|\sigma$ (d) $K^2\sigma$

Solution: (c) Explanation: Mean is also multiplied by K then $\sigma^2 = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^n (Kx_i - K\bar{x})^2$

$$\Rightarrow SD = |K| \sqrt{\frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^n (Kx_i - K\bar{x})^2} \Rightarrow SD = |k|\sigma$$

ASSERTION REASON QUESTIONS SOLVED

DIRECTION : In each of the following questions, a statement of Assertion is given followed by a corresponding statement of Reason just below it. Of the statements, mark the correct answer as

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
(b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
(c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

(d) Assertion is false but reason is true.

Q.1 Assertion (A) The mean deviation about mean for the data 4,7,8,9,10,12,13,14,4 is 9.33

Reason (R) The mean deviation about the mean $\bar{x}$ is $(MD) = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n |x_i - \bar{x}|$.

Solution:- (a) Explanation: (A) Mean = $\frac{81}{9} \Rightarrow \text{Mean} = 9.33$

(R) is correct.

Q.2 Consider the following data

x_i	5	10	15	20	25
f_i	7	4	6	3	5

Then, the mean deviation about the mean is 6.32.

Reason (R) Consider the following data

x_i	10	30	50	70	90
f_i	4	24	28	16	8

Then, the mean deviation about the mean is 15.

Solution:- (c) Explanation: By calculating A is true and R is false.

Q.3 Assertion (A) - The mean deviation about median calculated for series, where variability is very high, cannot be fully relied.

Reason (R) - The median is not a representative of central tendency for the series where degree of variability is very high.

Solution: (a) A is true and R is also true.

Explanation: Median is the middle term of the arranged ascending/descending order of data

Q.4. Assertion (A)- The Variance of 20 observations is 5 if each observation is multiplied by 2, then new variance of the resulting observations will be 20.

Reason (R) - If each observation is multiplied by a constant K, the variance of the resulting observations becomes K^2 times the original variance.

Solution: (a) A is true and R is also true.

Explanation: variance of new observations = $2^2 \times 5 = 20$.

reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

Q.5. Assertion (A)- The Variance of 30 observations is 17 if each observation is increased by 5, then new variance of the resulting observations will be 17.

Reason (R) - If each observation is increased by a constant K, the variance of the resulting observations remains unchanged.

Solution: (a) A is true and R is also true.

Explanation: variance of new observations = 17.

reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

Q.6. Assertion (A)- The Variance of 25 observations is 13 if each observation is decreased by 5, then new variance of the resulting observations will be 8.

Reason (R) - If each observation is decreased by a constant K, the variance of the resulting observations remains unchanged.

Solution: (d) A is False and R is true.

Explanation:- New variance of the resulting observations will be 13. As we know that If each observation is decreased by a constant K, the variance of the resulting observations remains unchanged.

Q,7. Assertion (A)- The Variance of first n natural numbers is $\frac{n^2-1}{6}$.

Reason (R) – The sum of first n natural numbers $\frac{n(n+1)}{2}$ and the sum of square of first n natural numbers is $\frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}$.

Solution: (d) A is False and R is true.

Explanation:- Variance of first n natural numbers is $\frac{n^2-1}{12}$

The sum of first n natural numbers $\frac{n(n+1)}{2}$ and the sum of square of first n natural numbers is $\frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}$.

Q,8. Assertion (A)- Mean and variance of first ten multiples of 3 are 16.5 and 74.25 respectively.

Reason (R) The mean deviation about the mean $\bar{x}$ is $(MD) = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n |x_i - \bar{x}|$. Where $\text{mean}(\bar{x}) = \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{x_i}{n}$

Solution: (a) A is true and R is also true.

Explanation: By calculation $M=16.5$ and $\text{Variance} = 74.25$ and

The mean deviation about the mean $\bar{x}$ is $(MD) = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n |x_i - \bar{x}|$. Where $\text{mean}(\bar{x}) = \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{x_i}{n}$

Q,9. If $\sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - 5) = 3$ and $\sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - 5)^2 = 43$ and total number of terms is 18.

Assertion (A)- Mean of the distribution is 4.1666.

Reason (R)- Standard deviation of the distribution is 1.54.

Solution: (d) A is false and R is true.

Explanation: By calculation mean $M=5.166$ and standard deviation = 1.54.

Q,10. Assertion (A)- If the mean of n observations $1^2, 2^2, 3^2, \dots, n^2$ is $\frac{46n}{11}$, then $n = 11$.

Reason (R)- Mean of first n natural numbers is $\frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}$.

Solution: (c) A is true and R is false.

Explanation: $\frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6n} = \frac{46n}{11} \Rightarrow n = 11$.

$$\text{Mean} = \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6n} \Rightarrow \text{Mean} = \frac{(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}$$

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS

Question 1. Find the mean deviation about the mean.

x_i	5	10	15	20	25
f_i	7	4	6	3	5

x_i	f_i	$f_i x_i$	$ x_i - 14 $	$f_i x_i - 14 $
5	7	35	9	63
10	4	40	4	16
15	6	90	1	6
20	3	60	6	18
25	5	125	11	55
	25	350		158

$$\text{Mean}(\bar{x}) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^n f_i x_i = \frac{1}{25} \times 350 = 14$$

$$\therefore \text{Mean deviation about mean} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^n f_i |x_i - \bar{x}| = \frac{1}{25} \times 158 = 6.32$$

Question 2. Find the mean deviation about the median for the following data .

x_i	15	21	27	30	35
f_i	3	5	6	7	8

Solution :-

x_i	f_i	$c.f.$	$ x_i - 30 $	$f_i x_i - 30 $
15	3	3	15	45
21	5	8	9	45
27	6	14	3	18
30	7	21	0	0
35	8	29	5	40
	29			148

$$\text{Here, } \frac{N}{2} = \frac{29}{2} = 14.5$$

The $c.f.$ just greater than 14.5 is 21 and the corresponding value of x is 30.

$\therefore$ Median (M) = 30

$$\begin{aligned} \text{M.D. about median} &= \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^n f_i |x_i - M| \\ &= \frac{1}{29} \times 148 = 5.1 \end{aligned}$$

Question 3. Find the Mean deviation about mean.

Income per day	0-100	100-200	200-300	300-400	400-500	500-600	600-700	700-800
Number of persons	4	8	9	10	7	5	4	3

Solution:-

Income per day	Mid values x_i	f_i	$f_i x_i$	$ x_i - 358 $	$f_i x_i - 358 $
0-100	50	4	200	308	1232
100-200	150	8	1200	208	1664
200-300	250	9	2250	108	972
300-400	350	10	3500	8	80
400-500	450	7	3150	92	644
500-600	550	5	2750	192	960
600-700	650	4	2600	292	1168
700-800	750	3	2250	392	1176
		50	17900		7896

$$\text{Mean } (\bar{x}) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^n f_i x_i = \frac{1}{50} \times 17900 = 358$$

Mean deviation about mean

$$= \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^n f_i |x_i - \bar{x}| = \frac{1}{50} \times 7896 = 157.92$$

Question 4. Find the mean deviation about mean.

Heights (in cm)	95-105	105-115	115-125	125-135	135-145	145-155
Number of boys	9	13	26	30	12	10

Solution :-

Height (in cms)	Mid values x_i	f_i	$f_i x_i$	$ x_i - 125.3 $	$f_i x_i - 125.3 $
95 – 105	100	9	900	25.3	227.7
105 – 115	110	13	1430	15.3	198.9
115 – 125	120	26	3120	5.3	137.8
125 – 135	130	30	3900	4.7	141
135 – 145	140	12	1680	14.7	176.4
145 – 155	150	10	1500	24.7	247
		100	12530		1128.8

$$\text{Mean } (\bar{x}) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^n f_i x_i = \frac{1}{100} \times 12530 = 125.3$$

Mean deviation about mean

$$= \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^n f_i |x_i - \bar{x}| = \frac{1}{100} \times 1128.8 = 11.28$$

Question 5. Find the Variance of the following data.

6, 8, 10, 12, 14, 16, 18, 20, 22, 24

Solution: $\text{Mean} = \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{x_i}{n} = \frac{150}{10} = 15$

Variance $(\sigma^2) = \frac{330}{10} = 33.$

Question 6. Find the mean and variance of 6, 7, 10, 12, 13, 4, 8, 12

Solution: $\text{Mean}(M) = \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{x_i}{n} = \frac{72}{8} = 9.$

Variance $(\sigma^2) = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - \bar{x})^2 = \frac{74}{8} = 9.25$

Question 7. Find the mean and variance of first n natural numbers.

Solution: $\text{Mean}(M) = \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{x_i}{n} = \frac{n(n+1)}{2n} = \frac{(n+1)}{2}$

Variance $(\sigma^2) = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - \bar{x})^2 = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 - \left(\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \right)^2$

Variance $(\sigma^2) = \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6n} - \left(\frac{n+1}{2} \right)^2 = \frac{n^2-1}{12}$

Question 8. Find the Mean and Standard Deviation of first 10 multiples of 3

$$\text{Solution--: Mean}(M) = \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{x_i}{n} = \frac{165}{10} = 16.5$$

$$\text{Variance } (\sigma^2) = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - \bar{x})^2 = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 - \left(\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \right)^2$$

$$\text{Variance } (\sigma^2) = 346.5 - 272.25 = 74.25$$

$$\text{Standard Deviation} = \sqrt{74.25} = 8.62.$$

Question 9. The mean and S.D. of six observations are 8 and 4 respectively. If each observation is multiplied by 3, find the new mean and new standard deviation

$$\text{Solution: New Mean} = 3 \times 8 = 24$$

$$\text{New Standard deviation} = 3 \times 4 = 12.$$

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS SOLVED

Question 1

Find the mean and standard deviation using short-cut method

x_i	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68
f_i	2	1	12	29	25	12	10	4	5

Solution :-

x_i	f_i	$u_i = x_i - 64$	$f_i u_i$	$f_i u_i^2$
60	2	-4	-8	32
61	1	-3	-3	9
62	12	-2	-24	48
63	29	-1	-29	29
64	25	0	0	0
65	12	1	12	12
66	10	2	20	40
67	4	3	12	36
68	5	4	20	80
	100		0	286

Let assumed mean (A) = 64

$$\text{Mean } (\bar{x}) = A + \frac{\sum f_i u_i}{N} = 64 + \frac{0}{100} = 64$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{S.D. } (\sigma) &= \frac{1}{N} \sqrt{N \sum f_i u_i^2 - (\sum f_i u_i)^2} \\ &= \frac{1}{100} \sqrt{100 \times 286 - (0)^2} \\ &= \frac{1}{100} \sqrt{28600} = \frac{1}{100} \times 169.1 = 1.69 \end{aligned}$$

Question 2:

Find the mean and variance for the following frequency distributions

Classes	0-30	30-60	60-90	90-120	120-150	150-180	180-210
Frequencies	2	3	5	10	3	5	2

Solution :-

Classes	Mid values x_i	f_i	$u_i = \frac{x_i - 105}{30}$	$f_i u_i$	$f_i u_i^2$
0 - 30	15	2	-3	-6	18
30 - 60	45	3	-2	-6	12
60 - 90	75	5	-1	-5	5
90 - 120	105	10	0	0	0
120 - 150	135	3	1	3	3
150 - 180	165	5	2	10	20
180 - 210	195	2	3	6	18
		30		2	76

Let assumed mean (A) = 105

$$\text{Mean } (\bar{x}) = A + \frac{\sum f_i u_i}{N} \times h = 105 + \frac{2}{30} \times 30 = 107$$

$$\text{Variance } (\sigma^2) = \frac{h^2}{N^2} [N \sum f_i u_i^2 - (\sum f_i u_i)^2]$$

$$= \frac{900}{900} [30 \times 76 - 4] = [2280 - 4] = 2276$$

Question 3. Find the mean and variance of given observation:

Classes	0-10	10-20	20-30	30-40	40-50
Frequencies	5	8	15	16	6

Solution:

Classes	Mid values x_i	f_i	$u_i = \frac{x_i - 25}{10}$	$f_i u_i$	$f_i u_i^2$
0 - 10	5	5	-2	-10	20
10 - 20	15	8	-1	-8	8
20 - 30	25	15	0	0	0
30 - 40	35	16	1	16	16
40 - 50	45	6	2	12	24
		50		10	68

Let assumed mean (A) = 25

$$\text{Mean } (\bar{x}) = A + \frac{\sum f_i u_i}{N} \times h = 25 + \frac{10}{50} \times 10$$

$$= 25 + 2 = 27$$

$$\text{Variance } (\sigma^2) = \frac{h^2}{N^2} [N \sum f_i u_i^2 - (\sum f_i u_i)^2]$$

$$= \frac{(10)^2}{(50)^2} [50 \times 68 - (10)^2] = \frac{100}{2500} [3400 - 100]$$

$$= \frac{1}{25} \times 3300 = 132$$

Question 4.

Find the mean, variance and standard deviation using short-cut method.

Heights in cms	70-75	75-80	80-85	85-90	90-95	95-100	100-105	105-110	110-115
No. of children	3	4	7	7	15	9	6	6	3

Solution :-

Height in cms	Mid values x_i	f_i	$u_i = \frac{x_i - 92.5}{5}$	$f_i u_i$	$f_i u_i^2$
70 – 75	72.5	3	-4	-12	48
75 – 80	77.5	4	-3	-12	36
80 – 85	82.5	7	-2	-14	28
85 – 90	87.5	7	-1	-7	7
90 – 95	92.5	15	0	0	0
95 – 100	97.5	9	1	9	9
100 – 105	102.5	6	2	12	24
105 – 110	107.5	6	3	18	54
110 – 115	112.5	3	4	12	48
		60		6	254

Let assumed mean (A) = 92.5

$$\text{Mean } (\bar{x}) = A + \frac{\sum f_i u_i}{N} \times h = 92.5 + \frac{6}{60} \times 5$$

$$= 92.5 + 0.5 = 93$$

$$\text{Variance } (\sigma^2) = \frac{h^2}{N^2} [N \sum f_i u_i^2 - (\sum f_i u_i)^2]$$

$$= \frac{(5)^2}{(60)^2} [60 \times 254 - (6)^2]$$

$$= \frac{25}{3600} \times 15204 = 105.58$$

$$\text{Standard deviation } (\sigma) = \sqrt{105.58} = 10.27$$

Question:-5

The mean and standard deviation of some data for the time taken to complete a test are calculated with the following results:

Number of observations = 25, mean = 18.2 seconds, standard deviation = 3.25 seconds. Further, another set of 15 observations $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{15}$, also in seconds, is now available and we have

$$\sum_{i=1}^{15} x_i = 279 \text{ and } \sum_{i=1}^{15} x_i^2 = 5524. \text{ Calculate the standard deviation based on all 40 observations.}$$

Solution-As per the given criteria, In first set, We have Number of observations, $n=25$ Mean=18.2, and standard deviation =3.25

And In second set, We have Number of observations, $n=15$ and $\sum_{i=1}^n x_i = 279$ and $\sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 = 5524$ For the first set we have

$$\sum_{i=1}^{25} x_i = 455 \quad \text{and} \quad \sum_{i=1}^{25} x_i^2 = 14069.0625$$

Therefore for all 40 observations

$$\sum_{i=1}^{40} x_i = 455 + 279 = 734 \quad \text{and} \quad \sum_{i=1}^{40} x_i^2 = 5524 + 8545.0625 = 14069.0625$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma^2 &= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 - \left(\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \right)^2 = \frac{14069.0625}{40} - \left(\frac{455}{40} \right)^2 \\ &= 15.004 \\ \sigma &= \sqrt{15.004} = 3.87 \end{aligned}$$

Question:6-

If M is the mean and σ^2 is the variance of n observations, and each observation is multiplied by K , then prove that the mean and variance of the observations KM and $K^2\sigma^2$, respectively (where, K is a non-zero constant).

Solution: New mean $= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n Kx_i = K \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i = KM$ &

New variance $= \sum_{i=1}^n Kx_i^2 - \left(\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n Kx_i \right)^2 = K^2\sigma^2$

Question:7

The lengths (in cm) of 10 rods in a shop are: 40.0, 52.3, 55.2, 72.9, 52.8, 79.0, 32.5, 15.2, 27.9, 30.2. Find the mean deviation from the mean.

Solution: mean $= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i = \frac{459.8}{10} = 45.98$ & MD $= \frac{164.6}{10} = 16.46$

Question:8 Find the mean and variance of 100 multiples of 5.

Solution: use concepts directly

Question:9 Calculate the mean deviation from the mean of a set of first n natural numbers where n is an odd natural number.

Solution: Use concepts directly.

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTION SOLVED

Question 1.

The diameters of circles (in mm) drawn in a design are given below:

Diameters	33-36	37-40	41-44	45-48	49-52
No. of Circles	15	17	21	22	25

Calculate the standard deviation and mean diameter of the circles.

Diameters	Modified Classes	Mid values x_i	f_i	$u_i = \frac{x_i - 42.5}{4}$	$f_i u_i$	$f_i u_i^2$
33 – 36	32.5 – 36.5	34.5	15	-2	-30	60
37 – 40	36.5 – 40.5	38.5	17	-1	-17	17
41 – 44	40.5 – 44.5	42.5	21	0	0	0
45 – 48	44.5 – 48.5	46.5	22	1	22	22
49 – 52	48.5 – 52.5	50.5	25	2	50	100
			100		25	199

Let assumed mean (A) = 42.5

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Mean } (\bar{x}) &= A + \frac{\sum f_i u_i}{N} \times h = 42.5 + \frac{25}{100} \times 4 \\ &= 42.5 + 1 = 43.5\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Standard deviation } (\sigma) &= \frac{h}{N} \sqrt{N \sum f_i u_i^2 - (\sum f_i u_i)^2} \\ &= \frac{4}{100} \sqrt{100 \times 199 - (25)^2} = \frac{1}{25} \sqrt{19275} \\ &= \frac{1}{25} \times 138.83 = 5.55\end{aligned}$$

Question 2: The mean and variance of 8 observations are 9 and 9.25 respectively. If six of the observations are 6, 7, 10, 12, 12 and 13. Find the remaining two observations.

Solution :-

Let the remaining two observations be x and y .

Therefore, the observations are 6, 7, 10, 12, 12, 13, x , y .

$$\text{Mean, } \bar{x} = \frac{6 + 7 + 10 + 12 + 12 + 13 + x + y}{8} = 9$$

$$\Rightarrow 60 + x + y = 72$$

$$\Rightarrow x + y = 12 \quad \dots(1)$$

$$\text{Variance} = 9.25 = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^8 (x_i - \bar{x})^2$$

$$9.25 = \frac{1}{8} [(-3)^2 + (-2)^2 + (1)^2 + (3)^2 + (3)^2 + (4)^2 + x^2 + y^2 - 2 \times 9(x + y) + 2 \times (9)^2]$$

$$9.25 = \frac{1}{8} [9 + 4 + 1 + 9 + 9 + 16 + x^2 + y^2 - 18(12) + 162]$$

...[Using (1)]

$$9.25 = \frac{1}{8} [48 + x^2 + y^2 - 216 + 162]$$

$$9.25 = \frac{1}{8} [x^2 + y^2 - 6]$$

$$\Rightarrow x^2 + y^2 = 80 \quad \dots(2)$$

From (1), we obtain

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2xy = 144 \dots (3)$$

From (2) and (3), we obtain

$$2xy = 64 \dots (4)$$

Subtracting (4) from (2), we obtain

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2xy = 80 - 64 = 16$$

$$x - y = \pm 4 \dots (5)$$

Therefore, from (1) and (5), we obtain

$$x = 8 \text{ and } y = 4, \text{ when } x - y = 4$$

$$x = 4 \text{ and } y = 8, \text{ when } x - y = -4$$

Thus, the remaining observations are 4 and 8.

Question 3: The mean and variance of 7 observations are 8 and 16 respectively. If five of the observations are 2, 4, 10, 12, and 14. Find the remaining two observations.

Solution :-

Let the remaining two observations be x and y .

The observations are 2, 4, 10, 12, 14, x , y .

$$\text{Mean, } \bar{x} = \frac{2+4+10+12+14+x+y}{7} = 8$$

$$\Rightarrow 56 = 42 + x + y$$

$$\Rightarrow x + y = 14$$

...(1)

$$\text{Variance} = 16 = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^7 (x_i - \bar{x})^2$$

$$16 = \frac{1}{7} [(-6)^2 + (-4)^2 + (2)^2 + (4)^2 + (6)^2 + x^2 + y^2 - 2 \times 8(x + y) + 2 \times (8)^2]$$

$$16 = \frac{1}{7} [36 + 16 + 4 + 16 + 36 + x^2 + y^2 - 16(14) + 2(64)]$$

...[Using (1)]

$$16 = \frac{1}{7} [108 + x^2 + y^2 - 224 + 128]$$

$$16 = \frac{1}{7} [12 + x^2 + y^2]$$

$$\Rightarrow x^2 + y^2 = 112 - 12 = 100$$

$$x^2 + y^2 = 100$$

...(2)

From (1), we obtain

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2xy = 196 \dots (3)$$

From (2) and (3), we obtain

$$2xy = 196 - 100$$

$$2xy = 96 \dots (4)$$

Subtracting (4) from (2), we obtain

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2xy = 100 - 96$$

$$(x - y)^2 = 4$$

$$x - y = \pm 2 \dots (5)$$

Therefore, from (1) and (5), we obtain

$$x = 8 \text{ and } y = 6 \text{ when } x - y = 2$$

$$x = 6 \text{ and } y = 8 \text{ when } x - y = -2$$

Thus, the remaining observations are 6 and 8.

CASE STUDY BASED QUESTION SOLVED

Question 1. An analysis of monthly wages paid to the workers of two firms A and B belonging to the same industry gives the following results:

	Firm A:	Firm B:
Number of workers:	1000	1200
Average monthly wages	Rs 2800	Rs 2800
Variance of distribution	100	169

Based on the above information, find

- (i) Total monthly wages paid by firm A
- (ii) Total monthly wages paid by firm B
- (iii) Standard Deviation of firm A and B.

Solution:- (i) Total monthly wages paid by firm A = $1000 \times 2800 = 2800000$

(ii) Total monthly wages paid by firm B = $1200 \times 2800 = 3,360,000$

(iii) Variance of distribution A = $\sqrt{100} = 10$

Variance of distribution B = $\sqrt{169} = 13$

Question 2. The mean and standard deviation of some data for the time taken to complete a test are calculated with the following results:

Number of observations = 25, Mean = 18.2 seconds, Standard Deviation = 3.25 seconds

Further another set of 15 observations $x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots, x_{15}$ also in seconds is now available and we have $\sum_{i=1}^{15} x_i = 279$ and $\sum_{i=1}^{15} x_i^2 = 5524$.

Based on the above information, answer the following questions:

- (i) What is the sum of all 40 observations?
- (ii) What is the mean of all 40 observations?
- (iii) What is the standard deviation of all 40 observations?

Solution:- (i) Sum of all 40 observations = $25 \times 18.2 + 279 = 455 + 279 = 734$.

(ii) Mean = $\frac{734}{40} = 18.35$. (iii) S.D. = 3.87

Question 3. The sum and the sum of squares corresponding to length x (in cm) and weight y (in gm) of 50 plant products are given below:

$$\sum_{i=1}^{50} x_i = 212, \quad \sum_{i=1}^{50} x_i^2 = 902.8, \quad \sum_{i=1}^{50} y_i = 261, \quad \sum_{i=1}^{50} y_i^2 = 1457.6$$

Based on the above information, answer the following questions:

- (i) Find the mean length of the plant products.
- (ii) Find the mean weight of the plant products.
- (iii) Find the variance of the length of the plant products.
- (iv) Find the S.D. of the length of the plant products.

Solution: (i) mean = $\frac{212}{50} = 4.24$

(ii) mean weight = $\frac{261}{50} = 5.24$

(iii) variance = $\frac{902.8}{50} - (4.24)^2 = 18.056 - 17.9776 = 0.0784$

(iv) Standard Deviation = $\sqrt{0.0784} = 0.28$.

CHAPTER 14 - PROBABILITY

DEFINITIONS AND FORMULAE

Random Experiments: An experiment is called random experiment if it satisfies the following conditions:

- (i) It has more than one possible outcome.
- (ii) It is not possible to predict the outcome in advance.

Outcomes and sample space:

A possible result of a random experiment is called its outcome.

The set of all possible outcomes of a random experiment is called the sample space associated with the experiment. Each element of the sample space is called a sample point. Any subset E of a sample space S is called an event.

Impossible and Sure Events:

The empty set ϕ and the sample space S describe events. ϕ is called an impossible event and S , i.e., the whole sample space is called the sure event.

Compound Event:

If an event has more than one sample point, it is called a Compound event.

Complementary Event:

For every event A , there corresponds another event A' called the complementary event to A . It is also called the event 'not A '.

The Event A or B :

When the sets A and B are two events associated with a sample space, then ' $A \cup B$ ' is the event 'either A or B or both'. This event $(A \cup B)$ is also called ' A or B '.

The Event A and B :

If A and B are two events, then the set $A \cap B$ denotes the event ' A and B '.

The Event A but not B :

The set $A - B$ denotes the event ' A but not B '. $A - B = A \cap B'$

Mutually exclusive events:

Two events A and B are called mutually exclusive events if the occurrence of any one of them excludes the occurrence of the other event, i.e., if they can not occur simultaneously. In this case the sets A and B are disjoint i.e. $A \cap B = \phi$.

Axiomatic Approach to Probability:

Let S be the sample space of a random experiment. The probability P is a real valued function whose domain is the power set of S and range is the interval $[0, 1]$ satisfying the following axioms

- (i) For any event E , $P(E) \geq 0$
- (ii) $P(S) = 1$
- (iii) If E and F are mutually exclusive events, then $P(E \cup F) = P(E) + P(F)$.

From the axiomatic definition of probability it follows that

- (i) $0 \leq P(\omega_i) \leq 1$ for each $\omega_i \in S$
- (ii) $P(\omega_1) + P(\omega_2) + \dots + P(\omega_n) = 1$

Equally likely outcomes:

All outcomes with equal probability.

Probability of an event:

For a finite sample space with equally likely outcomes

Probability of an event $P(A) = \frac{n(A)}{n(S)}$, where $n(A)$ = number of elements in the set A,
 $n(S)$ = number of elements in the set S.

Probability of the event (A or B) : $P(A \text{ or } B) = P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cap B)$.

For mutually exclusive events A and B, we have $P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B)$

Probability of event (not A) = $P(A') = P(\text{not } A) = 1 - P(A)$.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS SOLVED.

1. Set which contains all possible outcomes is
 a) event b) empty set c) sample space d) probability

Solution: (c) Sample Space

Explanation- Set of all possible outcomes is called Sample space

2. What is a complementary event for “At least one head appears” if two coins are tossed simultaneously?

- (a) Exactly one head appears (b) At least one tail appears
 (c) At most one tail appears (d) None head appears

Solution: (d) None head appears

Explanation- $n(S) = \{HT, TH, TT, HH\}$, $n(E) = \{HT, TH, HH\}$, $n(\bar{E}) = \{TT\}$

3. Six text books numbered 1,2, 3,4,5 and 6 are arranged at random. What is the probability that the text books 2 and 3 will occupy consecutive places ?

- a) $\frac{1}{2}$ b) $\frac{1}{3}$ c) $\frac{1}{4}$ d) $\frac{1}{6}$

Solution: (b) $\frac{1}{3}$,

Explanation - $n(S) = 6! = 720$ and $n(E) = 5! \times 2! = 240$

Therefore $P(E) = \frac{240}{720} = \frac{1}{3}$

4. Given $P(A \cup B) = \frac{5}{6}$, $P(A \cap B) = \frac{1}{3}$ and $P(\bar{B}) = \frac{1}{2}$. What is $P(\bar{A})$?

- a) $\frac{1}{2}$ b) $\frac{1}{3}$ c) $\frac{2}{3}$ d) $\frac{1}{6}$

Solution:- (b) $\frac{1}{3}$

Explanation- $P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cap B)$

Thus $\frac{5}{6} = P(A) + \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{3}$

$$P(A) = \frac{2}{3} \Rightarrow P(\bar{A}) = 1 - \frac{2}{3} = \frac{1}{3}$$

6. From a deck of 52 cards, the probability of drawing a face card is

- a) $\frac{4}{13}$ b) $\frac{3}{13}$ c) $\frac{1}{13}$ d) $\frac{1}{4}$

Solution : (c) = $\frac{3}{13}$

Explanation: Since there are 12 face cards in a pack of 52 cards. Therefore, Required probability = $\frac{12}{52}$

7. If two squares are chosen at random on a chess board, the probability that they have a side common is

- (a) $\frac{2}{7}$ (b) $\frac{1}{18}$ (c) $\frac{1}{9}$ (d) $\frac{4}{9}$

Solution: – (b) $\frac{1}{18}$

Explanation - Required probability = $\frac{112}{64 \times 64} = \frac{112}{4096} = \frac{1}{36}$ (Number of horizontal adjacent pairs = $8 \times 7 = 56$ and number of vertical adjacent pairs = 56, So number of favourable outcomes = 112)

8. An unbiased dice is rolled four times. The probability that the minimum number on any toss is not less than 3 is

- a) $\frac{16}{81}$ (b) $\frac{1}{81}$ (c) $\frac{65}{81}$ (d) $\frac{80}{81}$

Solution:- (a) $\frac{16}{81}$

Explanation - The probability that the outcome of a single throw of a die is any one of 3,4,5 or 6 is equal to $\frac{4}{6} = \frac{2}{3}$ of the die is rolled four times, the required probability is equal to $\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^4$

9. If three events A, B and C are mutually exclusive, then which one of the following is correct?

- a) $P(A \cap B \cap C) = 0$ b) $P(A \cap B \cap C) = 1$ c) $P(A \cup B \cup C) = 1$ d) $P(A \cup B \cup C) = 0$

Solution: - a) $P(A \cap B \cap C) = 0$

Explanation - $P(A \cap B \cap C) = 0$

10. Two dice are thrown together. The probability that neither they show equal digits nor the sum of their digits is 9 will be

- a) $\frac{13}{15}$ b) $\frac{13}{18}$ c) $\frac{8}{9}$ d) $\frac{1}{9}$

Solution : b) $\frac{13}{18}$

Explanation – $n(s) = 6 \times 6 = 36$

Favourable outcomes = $36 - 6 - 4 = 26$

Therefore, required probability = $\frac{26}{36} = \frac{13}{18}$

ASSERTION-REASON BASED QUESTIONS SOLVED

In the following questions a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R).

Choose the correct answer out of the following choices:

- (A) Both (A) and (R) are individually true and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
(B) Both (A) and (R) are individually true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
(C) (A) is true, but (R) is false.

(D) (A) is false, but (R) is true.

1. Assertion (A) : $P(A) = \frac{3}{4}$ and $P(B) = \frac{3}{8}$, then $P(A \cup B) \geq \frac{3}{4}$

Reason (R) : $P(A) \leq P(A \cup B)$ and $P(B) \leq P(A \cup B)$; hence $P(A \cup B) \geq \max\{P(A), P(B)\}$

Answer - (A) Both (A) and (R) are individually true and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).

Explanation - $P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cap B)$

Therefore $P(A) \leq P(A \cup B)$ and $P(B) \leq P(A \cup B)$

2. Assertion (A) : The probability of drawing either an ace or a king from a deck of playing cards in a single draw is $\frac{2}{13}$

Reason (R) : For two events E_1 and E_2 , which are not mutually exclusive probability is given by $P(E_1 \cup E_2)$
 $= P(E_1) + P(E_2) - P(E_1 \cap E_2)$.

Solution:- (b) Both true but R is not correct explanation of A

Explanation – $n(s) = 52$

Favourable Outcomes = 8

Probability = $\frac{8}{52} = \frac{2}{13}$

Hence assertion is correct

3. Assertion (A) : Two dice are thrown simultaneously. There are 11 possible outcomes and each of them has a probability $\frac{1}{11}$.

Reason (R) : Probability of an event E is defined as $P(E) = \frac{\text{Number of favourable outcomes}}{\text{total number of outcomes}}$

Solution:- (D) (A) is false, but (R) is true

Explanation – since total outcomes = 36

4. Assertion (A) : If A, B, C are three mutually exclusive and exhaustive events of an experiment such that $P(A) = 2P(B) = 3P(C)$, then $P(A) = \frac{6}{11}$.

Reason (R) : If A, B, C are three mutually exclusive and exhaustive events of an experiment then $P(A) + P(B) + P(C) = 1$.

Solution:- (A) Both (A) and (R) are individually true and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).

Explanation – $P(A \cup B \cup C) = P(A) + P(B) + P(C) = \frac{6}{66} = 1$

Hence Both (A) and (R) are individually true and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).

5. Assertion (A): Two cards are drawn from a well shuffled pack of 52 playing cards with replacement.

Reason (R): The probability that both are jack cards is $\left(\frac{1}{13}\right)^2$.

Solution:- (C) (A) is true, but (R) is false.

Explanation - $\frac{4}{52} \times \frac{4}{52} = \frac{1}{13} \times \frac{1}{13} = \left(\frac{1}{13}\right)^2$

6. A can solve 80% of the problems given in a book and B can solve 60%.

Assertion (A): The probability that at least one of them will solve a problem is 0.92.

Reason (R): The probability that none of them will solve problem is 0.08.

Solution:- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.

Explanation - Here, $P(A) = 0.80$ and $P(B) = 0.60$

Therefore, $P(\text{at least one of them will solve a problem})$

$$= 1 - [P(A) \times P(B)]$$

$$= 1 - [(1 - 0.80) \times (1 - 0.60)]$$

$$= 1 - (0.20 \times 0.40)$$

$$= 1 - 0.080$$

$$= 0.92$$

Also, $P(\text{none of them solve a problem}) = 1 - P(\text{at least one of them will solve a problem})$

$$= 1 - 0.92$$

$$= 0.08$$

7. **Assertion(A):** The probability of a sure event is 1.

Reason (R): For a sure event, no. of favourable outcomes = $n(S)$

Solution: - (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.

8. **Assertion (A):** The probability of any event is always less than zero.

Reason (R): Probability lies between 0 and 1.

Solution:: (d) Assertion is false, but Reason is true.

9. **Assertion (A):** If an event has only one favourable outcome, then its probability is 1.

Reason (R): Probability is defined as the ratio of number of favourable outcomes to total number of outcomes.

Solution:: (c) Assertion is false, but Reason is true.

10. **Assertion (A):** If two events are equally likely, then their probabilities are equal.

Reason (R): Equally likely events occur with the same frequency in repeated trials.

Solution:: (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A because of same frequency their probability shall be equal.

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS SOLVED

1. 20 cards are numbered from 1 to 20. One card is drawn at random. What is the probability that the number in the cards is a multiple of 4?

Solution:

We have to find the probability that the number on the cards is a multiple of 4

Given: 20 cards numbered from 1 – 20

$$\text{Formula: } P(E) = \frac{n(E)}{n(S)}$$

one card is drawn at random therefore total possible outcomes are ${}^{20}C_1$

$$\text{therefore } n(S) = {}^{20}C_1 = 20$$

Let E be the event that the number on the drawn card is a multiple of 4

$$E = \{4, 8, 12, 16, 20\}$$

$$n(E) = {}^5C_1 = 5$$

$$P(E) = \frac{1}{4}$$

2. In a hand at Whist, what is the probability that four kings are held by a specified player?

Solution:

We have to find the probability that four kings are held by a specified player

Given: game of whist is being played

Formula: $P(E) =$

we have to find the probability that all four kings are held by a specific player since in one hand at whist, a player has 13 cards

total possible outcomes are ${}^{52}C_{13}$

therefore $n(S) = {}^{52}C_{13}$

let E be the event that a player has 4 kings

$n(E) = {}^{48}C_9 {}^4C_4$

probability of occurrence of this event is

$$P(E) = \frac{11}{4165}$$

3. Three unbiased coins are tossed once. What is the probability of getting two heads?

Solution: In tossing three coins, then the sample space of event is given by

$S = \{HHH, HHT, HTH, THH, HTT, THT, TTH, TTT\}$.

And, therefore, $n(S) = 8$.

Let E = event of getting 2 heads.

Then, $E = \{HHT, HTH, THH\}$

and, therefore, $n(E) = 3$.

$$P(\text{getting 2 heads}) = P(E) = \frac{3}{8}$$

4. One die of red colour, one of white colour and one of blue colour are placed in a bag. One die is selected at random and rolled, its colour and the number on its uppermost face is noted. Describe the sample space.

Solution: Let us assume that 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 are the possible numbers that come when the die is thrown.

And also, assume die of red colour be 'R', die of white colour be 'W', die of blue colour be 'B'.

, the total number of sample space = $(6 \times 3) = 18$

The sample space of the event is

$S = \{(R,1),(R,2),(R,3),(R,4),(R,5),(R,6),(W,1),(W,2),(W,3),(W,4),(W,5),(W,6)$
 $(B,1),(B,2),(B,3),(B,4),(B,5),(B,6)\}$

5. Two coins are tossed once. Find the probability of getting at least 1 head.

Solution: When two coins are tossed once, then the sample space of event is given by

$S = \{HH, HT, TH, TT\}$

and, therefore, $n(S) = 4$.

Let E = event of getting at least 1 head.

Then,

$E = \{HT, TH, HH\}$

and, therefore, $n(E) = 3$.

$$P(\text{getting at least 1 head}) = P(E) = \frac{3}{4}$$

6. P and Q are two candidates seeking admission in I.I.T. The probability that P is selected is 0.5 and the probability that both P and Q are selected is at most 0.3. Prove that the probability of Q being selected is at most 0.8.

Solution: According to the question,

we can write,

Let A_1 and A_2 be two events defined as follows:

$A_1 = P$ is selected, $A_2 = Q$ is selected.

We have, $P(A_1) = 0.5$ and $P(A_1 \cap A_2) \leq 0.3$

Now, $P(A_1 \cup A_2) \leq 1$

$$P(A_1) + P(A_2) - P(A_1 \cap A_2) \leq 1 \Rightarrow 0.5 + P(A_2) - P(A_1 \cap A_2) \leq 1$$

$$\Rightarrow P(A_2) \leq 0.5 + P(A_1 \cap A_2) \Rightarrow P(A_2) \leq 0.5 + 0.3 \Rightarrow P(A_2) \leq 0.8$$

7. Two balls are drawn at random from a bag containing 2 white, 3 red, 5 green and 4 black balls, one by one without replacement. Find the probability that both the balls are of different colours.

Solution: We have to find the probability that both the balls are of different colours.

Given: 2 white, 3 red, 5 green, 4 black

Formula:

two balls are drawn one by one, we have to find the probability that they are of different colours

total possible outcomes are ${}^{14}C_2$

therefore $n(S) = {}^{14}C_2 = 91$

let E be the event that all balls are of same colour

$$E = \{WW, RR, GG, BB\}$$

$$n(E) = {}^2C_2 + {}^3C_2 + {}^5C_2 + {}^4C_2 = 20$$

probability of occurrence is $p(E) = \frac{20}{91}$

Therefore, the probability of non-occurrence of the event (all balls are different) is

$$p(E') = 1 - P(E)$$

$$p(E') = \frac{71}{91}$$

8. A coin is tossed. If head comes up, a die is thrown but if tail comes up, the coin is tossed again. Find the probability of obtaining head and an even number.

Solution: We have to find the probability of obtaining a head and an even number

Head and an even number can be obtained in any one of the following ways:

(H, 2), (H, 4), (H, 6).

Favourable number of elementary events = 3

Hence, the required probability = $\frac{3}{8}$

9. A box contains 10 bulbs, of which just three are defective. If a random sample of five bulbs is drawn, find the probabilities that the sample contains exactly two defective bulbs.

Solution: We have to find the probabilities that the sample contains exactly two defective bulbs.

Out of 10 bulbs 5 can be chosen in ${}^{10}C_5$ ways.

So, the total number of elementary events = ${}^{10}C_5$

The number of ways of selecting 2 defective bulbs out of 3 defective bulbs and 3 non-defective bulbs out of 7 non-defective bulbs is ${}^3C_2 \times {}^7C_3$

Favourable number of elementary events = ${}^3C_2 \times {}^7C_3$

So, required probability = $\frac{5}{12}$

10. In a single throw of three dice, determine the probability of getting a total of 5.

Solution:

We have to find the probability of getting a total of 5

Total number of elementary events associated with the random experiment of throwing three dice simultaneously is $6 \times 6 \times 6 = 216$.

A total of 5 can be obtained in one of the following ways:

(1, 1, 3), (3, 1, 1), (1, 3, 1), (2, 2, 1), (1, 2, 2), (2, 1, 2)

Favourable number of elementary events = 6

Hence, Required probability = $\frac{6}{216} = \frac{1}{36}$

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS SOLVED

1. Three coins are tossed. Describe two events A and B which are mutually exclusive.

Solution: When three coins are tossed, then the sample space of the event is given by

$S = \{HHH, HHT, HTH, HTT, THH, THT, TTH, TTT\}$

Now, The subparts are:

The two events which are mutually exclusive are when,

A: getting no tails

B: getting no heads

Then, $A = \{HHH\}$ and $B = \{TTT\}$

So, The intersection of this set will be null set.

Or, The sets are disjoint.

2. A fair coin with 1 marked on one face and 6 on the other and a fair die are both tossed. Find the probability that the sum of numbers that turn up is (i) 3 (ii) 12.

Solution: The coin with 1 marked on one face and 6 on the other face.

The coin and die are tossed together.

$S = \{(1, 1), (1, 2), (1, 3), (1, 4), (1, 5), (1, 6), (6, 1), (6, 2), (6, 3), (6, 4), (6, 5), (6, 6)\}$

$n(S) = 12$.

(i) Let A be the event having sum of numbers is 3

$A = \{(1, 2)\}$

$n(A) = 1$

Thus $P(A) = \frac{1}{12}$

(ii) Let B be the event having sum of number is 12

$B = \{(6, 6)\}$

$n(B) = 1$

Thus $P(B) = \frac{1}{12}$

3. Let A and B be two mutually exclusive events of a random experiment such that $P(\text{not } A) = 0.65$ and $P(A \text{ or } B) = 0.65$, find $P(B)$.

Solution: It is given that A and B are mutually exclusive events

$P(\text{not } A) = 0.65$, $P(A \text{ or } B) = 0.65$

To find : $P(B)$

Formula used : $P(A) = 1 - P(\text{not } A)$

$P(A \text{ or } B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \text{ and } B)$

For mutually exclusive events A and B, $P(A \text{ and } B) = 0$

$$P(A) = 1 - P(\text{not } A)$$

$$P(A) = 1 - 0.65$$

$$P(A) = 0.35$$

Substituting the values in the above formula we get,

$$0.65 = 0.35 + P(B)$$

$$P(B) = 0.65 - 0.35$$

$$P(B) = 0.30$$

4. Six new employees, two of whom are married to each other, are to be assigned six desks that are lined up in a row. If the assignment of employees to desks is made randomly, what is the probability that the married couple will have nonadjacent desks? [Hint: First find the probability that the couple has adjacent desks, and then subtract it from 1.]

Solution: Given that total new employees = 6

So, they can be arranged in $6!$ ways.

$$n(S) = \text{total number of outcomes} = 6! = 6 \times 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 720$$

Two adjacent desks for married couple can be selected in 5 ways i.e. (1, 2), (2, 3), (3, 4), (4, 5), (5, 6)

Married couple can be arranged in the two desks in $2!$ Ways

Other four persons can be arranged in $4!$ Ways

So, number of ways in which married couple occupy adjacent desks = $5 \times 2! \times 4! = 5 \times 2 \times 1 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 240$

Let E be the event that the couple occupy adjacent desks = 240

$$n(E) = 240$$

$$P(E) = P(\text{they occupy adjacent desks}) = \frac{1}{3}$$

$$\text{Required probability} = P(\text{they occupy non adjacent desks}) = P(\text{not } E) = 1 - P(E) = \frac{2}{3}$$

5. In a certain lottery 10,000 tickets are sold and, ten equal prizes are awarded. What is the probability of not getting a prize if you buy two tickets?

Solution: Given, total number of tickets = 10,000

Number of prize bearing tickets = 10

So number of tickets not bearing prize = $10,000 - 10 = 9990$

Let B be the event that two bought tickets are not prize bearing tickets.

Now, out of 10,000 tickets one can buy 2 ticket in $^{10000}C_2$ ways i.e. total number of outcomes, and out of 9990 tickets not bearing any prize, one can buy 2 tickets in $^{9990}C_2$ ways i.e. total number of favourable outcomes.

$$\text{Hence, probability of not getting a prize if two tickets are bought} = \frac{{}^{9990}C_2}{{}^{10000}C_2}$$

6. What is the probability that a leap year has 53 Sundays?

Solution: A leap has 366 days i.e. 52 weeks + 2 days.

So, there will be 52 Sundays. (because every week has one Sunday)

So, we want another Sunday from the remaining two days.

The two days maybe, Sunday, Monday or Monday, Tuesday or Tuesday, Wednesday or Wednesday, Thursday or Thursday, Friday or Friday, Saturday or Saturday, Sunday

So, total outcomes are 7 and the desired outcomes are 2 (Sunday, Monday or Saturday, Sunday)

Therefore, the probability of getting 53 Sundays in a leap year = $\frac{2}{7}$

7. Find the probability of getting 2 or 3 tails when a coin is tossed four times.

Solution: We have to find the probability of getting 2 or 3 tails when a coin is tossed four times.

Let S be the sample space associated with the experiment that a coin is tossed four times.

Then $n(S) = 2^4 = 16$

Consider the following events:

A: Event of getting 2 tails

B : Event of getting 3 tails

Then $A = \{HHTT, HTHT, HTTH, THTH, TTHH, THHT\}$

$n(A) = 6$

$P(A) = \frac{6}{16}$

$B = \{HTTT, THTT, TTHT, TTTH\}$

$n(B) = 4$

$P(B) = \frac{4}{16}$

Since events A and B are mutually exclusive, we have:

$P(A \text{ and } B) = 0$

By addition theorem, we have:

$P(A \text{ or } B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \text{ and } B) = \frac{5}{8}$

8. In an entrance test that is graded on the basis of two examination, the probability of a randomly chosen student passing the first examination is 0.8 and the probability of passing the second examination is 0.7. The probability of passing at least one of them is 0.95. What is the probability of passing both?

Solution: Let A be the event that the student passes the first examination

and B be the event that the student passes the second examination.

Given, $P(A) = 0.8$, $P(B) = 0.7$, and

Probability of passing at least A or B means $P(A \text{ or } B)$

Given $P(A \text{ or } B) = 0.95$

So $= P(A \text{ and } B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \text{ or } B) = 0.8 + 0.7 - 0.95 = 1.5 - 0.95 = 0.55$.

Hence, the probability of passing both examination is 0.55.

9. Three coins are tossed once. Let A denotes the event three heads show, B denotes the event two heads and one tail show, C denotes the event three tails show and D denotes the event a head shows on the first coin. Find that which are,

(i) mutually exclusive events.

(ii) simple events.

(iii) compound events.

Solution: When three coins are tossed, then the sample space is

$S = \{HHH, HHT, HTH, HTT, TTH, THT, THT, HTH\}$

Given, event A = Three heads show = $\{HHH\}$

event B = Two heads and one tail show = $\{HHT, HTH, THH\}$

event C = Three tails show = $\{TTT\}$

events D = A head shows on the first coin = $\{HHH, HHT, HTH, HTT\}$

$$A \cap B = \{HHH\} \cap \{HHT, HTH, THH\} = \{\}$$

$$A \cap C = \{HHH\} \cap \{TTT\} = \{\}$$

$$B \cap C = \{HHT, HTH, THH\} \cap \{TTT\} = \{\}$$

$$C \cap D = \{TTT\} \cap \{HHH, HHT, HTH, HTT\} = \{\}$$

$$\text{And } A \cap B \cap C = \{HHH\} \cap \{HHT, HTH, THH\} \cap \{TTT\} = \{\}$$

So, A and B; A and C; B and C; C and D; A, B and C are mutually exclusive events.

ii. A and C are simple events, since both have only one sample point.

iii. B and D are compound event, since they have more than one sample point.

10. Two dice are rolled. A is the event that the sum of the numbers shown on the two dice is 5, and B is the event that at least one of the dice shows up a 3. Are the two events

1. mutually exclusive,

2. exhaustive? Give arguments in support of your answer.

Solution: When two dice are rolled, we have $n(S) = 6 \times 6 = 36$.

Given events are;

A : Sum of the numbers shown on the two dice is 5.

Thus, $A = \{(1, 4), (2, 3), (4, 1), (3, 2)\}$, And B : at least one of the dice shows up a 3.

Thus, $B = \{(3, 1), (3, 2), (3, 3), (3, 4), (3, 5), (3, 6), (1, 3), (2, 3), (4, 3), (5, 3), (6, 3)\}$.

$A \cap B = \{(2, 3), (3, 2)\}$ does not equal to null set .

Hence, A and B are not mutually exclusive.

Also, $A \cup B$ does not equal to S.

A and B are not exhaustive events.

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTION SOLVED

1. A number is chosen from the numbers 1 to 100. Find the probability of its being divisible by 4 or 6.

Solution: We have to find the probability of its being divisible by 4 or 6.

Let A denote the event that the number is divisible by 4 and B denote the event that the number is divisible by 6.

To find : Probability that the number is both divisible by 4 or 6 = $P(A \text{ or } B)$

Probability = $P(A \text{ or } B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \text{ and } B)$

Numbers from 1 to 100 divisible by 4 are $\{4, 8, 12, 16, 20, 24, 28, 32, 36, 40, 44, 48, 52, 56, 60, 64, 68, 72, 76, 80, 84, 88, 92, 96, 100\}$.

There are 25 numbers from 1 to 100 divisible by 4

Favourable number of outcomes = 25

Total number of outcomes = 100 as there are 100 numbers from 1 to 100

$$P(A) = \frac{25}{100}$$

Numbers from 1 to 100 divisible by 6 are $\{6, 12, 18, 24, 30, 36, 42, 48, 54, 60, 66, 72, 78, 84, 90, 96\}$

There are 16 numbers from 1 to 100 divisible by 6

Favourable number of outcomes = 16

Total number of outcomes = 100 as there are 100 numbers from 1 to 100

$$P(B) = \frac{16}{100}$$

Numbers from 1 to 100 divisible by both 4 and 6 are $\{12, 24, 36, 48, 60, 72, 84, 96\}$

There are 8 numbers from 1 to 100 divisible by both 4 and 6

Favourable number of outcomes = 8

$$P(A \text{ and } B) = \frac{8}{100}$$

$$P(A \text{ or } B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \text{ and } B)$$

$$P(A \text{ or } B) = \frac{33}{100}$$

The probability that the number is both divisible by 4 or 6 = $P(A \text{ or } B) = \frac{33}{100}$

2. A fair coin is tossed four times, and a person win Rs.1 for each head and lose Rs. 1.50 for each tail that Turns up. Form the sample space calculate how many different amounts of money you can have after four tosses and the probability of having each of these amounts.

Solution: - Here a coin is tossed four times.

So number of elements in the sample space $n(S)$ will be $2^4 = 16$. $n(S) = 16$.

The sample space, $S = \{HHHH, HHHT, HHTH, HTHH, HTTH, HTHT, HHTT, HTTT, THHH, THHT, THTH, TTHH, TTTH, TTHT, THTT, TTTT\}$

Amounts:

- When 4 heads turns up = Rs(1 + 1 + 1 + 1) = Rs. 4. i.e., Person wins Rs. 4
- When 3 heads and 1 tail turns up = Rs(1 + 1 + 1 - 1.50) = Rs. 1.50. i.e., Person wins Rs. 1.50
- When 2 heads and 2 tails turns up = Rs(1 + 1 - 1.50 - 1.50) = Rs. 1. i.e., Person loses Rs. 1
- When 1 head and 3 tails turns up = Rs(1 - 1.50 - 1.50 - 1.50) = Rs 3.50. i.e., Person loses Rs. 3.50
- When 4 tails turns up = Rs(- 1.50 - 1.50 - 1.50 - 1.50) = Rs 6. i.e., Person loses Rs. 6

Let the events for which the person wins Rs 4, wins Rs 1.50, loses Rs 1, loses Rs 3.50 and loses Rs 6 be denoted by E_1, E_2, E_3, E_4 and E_5 i.e.,

$E_1 = \{HHHH\}$, $E_2 = \{HHHT, HHTH, HTHH, THHH\}$, $E_3 = \{HHTT, HTHT, HTTH, THTH, THHT, TTHH\}$, $E_4 = \{HTTT, TTTH, TTHT, THTT\}$, $E_5 = \{TTTT\}$

Here, $n(E_1) = 1$, $n(E_2) = 4$, $n(E_3) = 6$, $n(E_4) = 4$ and $n(E_5) = 1$.

Hence, $P(E_1) = \frac{1}{16}$, $P(E_2) = \frac{4}{16}$, $P(E_3) = \frac{6}{16}$, $P(E_4) = \frac{4}{16}$, $P(E_5) = \frac{1}{16}$

3. Two dice are thrown. The events A, B, C, D, E and F are described as follows:

A = Getting an even number on the first die.

B = Getting an odd number on the first die.

C = Getting at most 5 as a sum of the numbers on the two dice.

D = Getting the sum of the numbers on the dice greater than 5 but less than 10.

E = Getting at least 10 as the sum of the numbers on the dice.

F = Getting an odd number on one of the dice.

Describe the following events: A and B, B or C, B and C, A and E, A or F, A and F.

Answer - A = Getting an even number on the first die.

$A = \{(2, 1), (2, 2), (2, 3), (2, 4), (2, 5), (2, 6), (4, 1), (4, 2), (4, 3), (4, 4), (4, 5), (4, 6), (6, 1), (6, 2), (6, 3), (6, 4), (6, 5), (6, 6)\}$

B = Getting an odd number on the first die.

$B = \{(1, 1), (1, 2), (1, 3), (1, 4), (1, 5), (1, 6), (3, 1), (3, 2), (3, 3), (3, 4), (3, 5), (3, 6), (5, 1), (5, 2), (5, 3), (5, 4), (5, 5), (5, 6)\}$

C = Getting at most 5 as sum of the numbers on the two dice.

$C = \{(1, 1), (1, 2), (1, 3), (1, 4), (2, 1), (2, 2), (2, 3), (3, 1), (3, 2), (4, 1)\}$

D = Getting the sum of the numbers on the dice >5 but <10 .

$D = \{ (1, 5), (1, 6), (2, 4), (2, 5), (2, 6), (3, 3), (3, 4), (3, 5), (3, 6), (4, 2), (4, 3), (4, 4), (4, 5), (5, 1), (5, 2), (5, 4), (6, 1), (6, 2), (6, 2), (6, 3) \}$

E = Getting at least 10 as the sum of the numbers on the dice.

$E = \{ (4, 6), (5, 5), (5, 6), (6, 4), (6, 5), (6, 6) \}$

F = Getting an odd number on one of the dice.

$F = \{ (1, 1), (1, 2), (1, 3), (1, 4), (1, 5), (1, 6), (3, 1), (3, 2), (3, 3), (3, 4), (3, 5), (3, 6), (5, 1), (5, 2), (5, 3), (5, 4), (5, 5), (5, 6), (2, 1), (2, 3), (2, 5), (4, 1), (4, 3), (4, 5), (6, 1), (6, 3), (6, 5) \}$

A and B are mutually exclusive events, thus $A \cap B = \text{null set}$

$B \cup C = \{ (1,1), (1,2), (1,3), (1,4), (1,5), (1,6), (3,1), (3,2), (3,3), (3,4), (3,5), (3,6), (5,1), (5,2), (5,3), (5,4), (5,5), (5,6), (2,1), (2,2), (2,3), (4,1) \}$

$B \cap C = \{ (1,1), (1,2), (1,3), (1,4), (3,1), (3,2) \}$

$A \cap E = \{ (4,6), (6,4), (6,5), (6,6) \}$

A or F = $\{ (2,1), (2,2), (2,3), (2,4), (2,5), (2,6), (4,1), (4,2), (4,3), (4,4), (4,5), (4,6), (6,1), (6,2), (6,3), (6,4), (6,5), (6,6), (1,1), (1,2), (1,3), (1,4), (1,5), (1,6), (3,1), (3,2), (3,3), (3,4), (3,5), (3,6), (5,1), (5,2), (5,3), (5,4), (5,5), (5,6) \}$

A and F = $\{ (2,1), (2,3), (2,5), (4,1), (4,3), (4,5), (6,1), (6,3), (6,5) \}$

Question 3. A bag contains 8 red and 5 white balls. Three balls are drawn at random. Find the probability that all the three balls are white.

Solution: There are 13 balls in the bag and three balls are to be taken out,

So the number of ways of doing this = $n(S) = \text{number of total outcomes} = {}^{13}C_3$

Now, we have to find the probability that all the three balls to be taken out from the bag are white

Let A be the event that all the three balls are white

As there are 5 white balls, so the number of ways in which this can be done = $n(A) = \text{number of favourable outcomes} = {}^5C_3$

We know that, $P(A) = P(\text{all the three balls are white}) = {}^5C_3 / {}^{13}C_3 = 5/143$

Question 4. A die is thrown.

Describe the following events:

- (i) A: a number less than 7.
- (ii) B: a number greater than 7.
- (iii) C: a multiple of 3.
- (iv) D: a number less than 4.
- (v) E: an even number greater than 4.
- (vi) F: a number not less than 3.

Also, find $A \cup B$, $A \cap B$, $B \cup C$, $E \cap F$, $D \cap E$, $A - C$, $D - E$, F' and $E \cap F'$.

Solution: When a die is thrown, then sample space

$S = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$

i. A: a number less than 7 = $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$

ii. B: a number greater than 7 = $\{ \} = \text{Null set}$.

iii. C: a multiple of 3 = $\{3, 6\}$

iv. D: a number less than 4 = $\{1, 2, 3\}$

v. E: an even number greater than 4 = $\{6\}$

vi. F: a number not less than 3 = {3, 4, 5, 6}

Now, $A \cup B$ = The elements which are in A or B or both

$$= \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\} \cup \{\} = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$$

The elements which are common in both $A \cap B = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$ and $\{\} = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$

$B \cup C$ = The elements which are in B or C or both

$$= \{\} \cup \{3, 6\} = \{3, 6\}$$

The elements which are common in both E and F = {6} and {3, 4, 5, 6} = {6}

The elements which are common in both D and E = {1, 2, 3} and {6} = null set

The elements which are in A but not in C = {1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6} - {3, 6} = {1, 2, 4, 5}

The elements which are in D but not in E = {1, 2, 3} - {6} = {1, 2, 3}

Question 5. Two dice are thrown. The events A, B and C are as follows:

A: getting an even number on the first die

B: getting an odd number on the first die

C: getting the sum of the numbers on the dice ≤ 5

Describe the events

(i) A' (ii) not B (iii) A or B (iv) A and B (v) A but not C (vi) B or C (vii) B and C

(viii) $A \cap B' \cap C'$

Solution: When two dice are thrown then

$S = \{(1, 1), (1, 2), (1, 3), (1, 4), (1, 5), (1, 6), (2, 1), (2, 2), (2, 3), (2, 4), (2, 5), (2, 6), (3, 1), (3, 2), (3, 3), (3, 4), (3, 5), (3, 6), (4, 1), (4, 2), (4, 3), (4, 4), (4, 5), (4, 6), (5, 1), (5, 2), (5, 3), (5, 4), (5, 5), (5, 6), (6, 1), (6, 2), (6, 3), (6, 4), (6, 5), (6, 6)\}$

A: getting an even number on the first die = {(2, 1), (2, 2), (2, 3), (2, 4), (2, 5), (2, 6), (4, 1), (4, 2), (4, 3), (4, 4), (4, 5), (4, 6), (6, 1), (6, 2), (6, 3), (6, 4), (6, 5), (6, 6)}

B: getting an odd number on the first die = {(1, 1), (1, 2), (1, 3), (1, 4), (1, 5), (1, 6), (3, 1), (3, 2), (3, 3), (3, 4), (3, 5), (3, 6), (5, 1), (5, 2), (5, 3), (5, 4), (5, 5), (5, 6)}

C: getting the sum of the number on the dice = {(1, 1), (1, 2), (1, 3), (1, 4), (2, 1), (2, 2), (2, 3), (3, 1), (3, 2), (4, 1)}

(i) $A' = \{(1, 1), (1, 2), (1, 3), (1, 4), (1, 5), (1, 6), (3, 1), (3, 2), (3, 3), (3, 4), (3, 5), (3, 6), (5, 1), (5, 2), (5, 3), (5, 4), (5, 5), (5, 6)\} = B$

(ii) not B = {(2, 1), (2, 2), (2, 3), (2, 4), (2, 5), (2, 6), (4, 1), (4, 2), (4, 3), (4, 4), (4, 5), (4, 6), (6, 1), (6, 2), (6, 3), (6, 4), (6, 5), (6, 6)} = A

(iii) A or B = {(1, 1), (1, 2), (1, 3), (1, 4), (1, 5), (1, 6), (2, 1), (2, 2), (2, 3), (2, 4), (2, 5), (2, 6), (3, 1), (3, 2), (3, 3), (3, 4), (3, 5), (3, 6), (4, 1), (4, 2), (4, 3), (4, 4), (4, 5), (4, 6), (5, 1), (5, 2), (5, 3), (5, 4), (5, 5), (5, 6), (6, 1), (6, 2), (6, 3), (6, 4), (6, 5), (6, 6)} = S

(iv) A and B = null set

(v) A but not C = $A - C = \{(2, 4), (2, 5), (2, 6), (4, 2), (4, 3), (4, 4), (4, 5), (4, 6), (6, 1), (6, 2), (6, 3), (6, 4), (6, 5), (6, 6)\}$

(vi) B or C = {(1, 1), (1, 2), (1, 3), (1, 4), (1, 5), (1, 6), (2, 1), (2, 2), (2, 3), (3, 1), (3, 2), (3, 3), (3, 4), (3, 5), (3, 6), (4, 1), (5, 1), (5, 2), (5, 3), (5, 4), (5, 5), (5, 6)}

(vii) B and C = {(1, 1), (1, 2), (1, 3), (1, 4), (3, 1), (3, 2)}

(viii) $A \cap B' \cap C' = \{(2, 4), (2, 5), (2, 6), (4, 2), (4, 3), (4, 4), (4, 5), (4, 6), (6, 1), (6, 2), (6, 3), (6, 4), (6, 5), (6, 6)\}$

CASE STUDY BASED QUESTION

Question 1. Read the following text carefully and answer the questions that follow:

On her vacation, Priyanka visits four cities. Delhi, Lucknow, Agra, Meerut in a random order.

1. What is the probability that she visits Delhi before Lucknow?
2. What is the probability she visit Delhi before Lucknow and Lucknow before Agra?
3. What is the probability she visits Delhi first and Lucknow last?

OR

What is the probability she visits Delhi either first or second?

Solution:1. Let the Priyanka visits four cities Delhi, Lucknow, Agra, Meerut are respectively A, B, C and D. Number of way's in which Priyanka can visit four cities A, B, C and D is $4!$ i.e. 24 $n(S) = 24$

Clearly, sample space for this experiment is

$S = \{ABCD, ABDC, ACBD, ACDB, ADBC, ADCB, BADC, BCAD, BCDA, BDAC, BDCB, CABD, CADB, CDAB, DCAB, DCBA, DBAC, DBCA\}$

Let E_1 be the event that Priyanka visits A before B.

Then,

$E_1 = \{ABCD, ABDC, ACBD, ACDB, ADBC, ADCB, CABD, CADB, CDAB, DCAB\}$

$n(E_1) = 12$

$$P(\text{she visits A before B}) = P(E_1) = \frac{1}{2}$$

2. Let the Priyanka visits four cities Delhi, Lucknow, Agra, Meerut are respectively A, B, C and D.

Number of way's in which Priyanka can visit four cities A, B, C and D is $4!$ i.e. 24

$n(S) = 24$

Clearly, sample space for this experiment is

$S = \{ABCD, ABDC, ACBD, ACDB, ADBC, ADCB, BADC, BCAD, BCDA, BDAC, BDCB, CABD, CADB, CDAB, DCAB, DCBA, DBAC, DBCA\}$

$E_1 = \{ABCD, ABDC, ACBD, ACDB, ADBC, ADCB, CABD, CADB, CDAB, DCAB\}$

$n(E_1) = 12$

$$P(\text{she visits A before B}) = \frac{1}{2}$$

3. Let the Priyanka visits four cities Delhi, Lucknow, Agra, Meerut are respectively A, B, C and D.

Number of way's in which Priyanka can visit four cities A, B, C and D is $4!$ i.e. 24

$n(S) = 24$

Clearly, sample space for this experiment is

$S = \{ABCD, ABDC, ACBD, ACDB, ADBC, ADCB, BADC, BCAD, BCDA, BDAC, BDCB, CABD, CADB, CDAB, DCAB, DCBA, DBAC, DBCA\}$

Let E_3 be the event that she visits A first and B last.

Then,

$E_3 = \{ACDB, ADCB\}$

$n(E_3) = 2$

$$P(\text{she visits A first and B last}) = P(E_3) = \frac{1}{12}$$

OR

Let the Priyanka visits four cities Delhi, Lucknow, Agra, Meerut are respectively A, B, C and D.

Number of way's in which Priyanka can visit four cities A, B, C and D is $4!$ i.e. 24

$n(S) = 24$

Clearly, sample space for this experiment is

S =

{ABCD, ABDC, ACBD, ACDB, ADBC, ADCBBACD, BADC, BCAD, BCDA, BDAC, BDCACABD, CAD B, CBAD, CBDA, CDAB, CDBA, DABC, DACB, DCAB, DCBA, DBAC, DBCA}

Let E4 be the event that she visits A either first or second.

Then,

$E4 = \{ABCD, ABDC, ACBD, ACDB, ADBC, ADCB, BACD, BADC, CABD, CADB, DABC, DACB\}$
 $n(E4) = 12$

Hence, $P(\text{she visits A either first or second}) = \frac{1}{2}$

Question 2.. Read the following text carefully and answer the questions that follow:

There are 4 red, 5 blue and 3 green marbles in a basket.

1. If two marbles are picked at randomly, find the probability that both red marbles.
2. If three marbles are picked at randomly, find the probability that all green marbles.
3. If two marbles are picked at randomly then find the probability that both are not blue marbles.

OR

If three marbles are picked at randomly, then find the probability that at least one of them is blue.

Solution: (1) $n(S) = 12$ $P(E) = \frac{4 \times 3}{12 \times 11} = \frac{1}{11}$
(2) $P(E) = \frac{3 \times 2}{12 \times 11 \times 10} = \frac{1}{220}$

(3) $P(E) = \frac{7 \times 6}{12 \times 11} = \frac{7}{22}$

OR

$$P(E) = 1 - P(\text{Not Blue}) = 1 - \frac{7}{44} = \frac{37}{44}$$

Question3. Read the following text carefully and answer the questions that follow:

Four friends Dinesh, Yuvraj, Sonu, and Rajeev are playing cards. Dinesh, shuffling a cards and told to Rajeev choose any four cards.

1. What is the probability that Rajeev getting all face card.
2. What is the probability that Rajeev getting two red cards and two black card.
3. What is the probability that Rajeev getting one card from each suit.

OR

What is the probability that Rajeev getting two king and two Jack cards.

Answer – 1. Total number of possible outcomes = ${}^{52}C_4$

We know that there are 12 face cards

Number of favourable outcomes = ${}^{12}C_4$

Required probability = ${}^{12}C_4 / {}^{52}C_4$

2. Total number of possible outcomes = ${}^{52}C_4$

We know that there are 26 red and 26 black cards.

Number of favourable outcomes = ${}^{26}C_2 \times {}^{26}C_2$

Required probability = ${}^{26}C_2 \times {}^{26}C_2 / {}^{52}C_4$

3. Total number of possible outcomes = ${}^{52}C_4$

Number of favourable outcomes = ${}^{13}C_1$

Required probability = $({}^{13}C_1)^4 / {}^{52}C_4$

OR

Total number of possible outcomes = ${}^{52}C_4$

In playing cards there are 4 king and 4 jack cards.

Number of favourable outcomes = $6 \times 6 = 36$

Required probability = $36 / {}^{52}C_4$

Question 4. Two candidates Anil and Surabhi appeared in a written test for a job position in a company. The probability that Anil will qualify the test is 0.05 and that Surabhi will qualify the test is 0.10, The probability that both will qualify the test is 0.02.

Based on the given information, answer the following questions.

- (i) Probability that Anil and Surabhi will not qualify the examination?
- (ii) Probability that at least one of them will not qualify the examination?
- (iii) Probability that only one of them will qualify the examination?

Solution- (i) $P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cap B)$

$P(A \cup B) = 0.05 + 0.10 - 0.02 = 0.13$ AS we know that $P(A \cup B) + P(\overline{A \cup B}) = 1$

$$P(\overline{A \cup B}) = 1 - P(A \cup B) = 1 - 0.13 = 0.87$$

(ii) $P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cap B)$

$$P(A \cup B) = 0.05 + 0.10 - 0.02 = 0.13$$

(iii) $P(\overline{A \cap B}) + P(\overline{A \cap B}) = 0.03 + 0.08 = 0.11$

Question 5. Aditya visit has dentist. The probability he will have a tooth extracted is 0.05. the probability that he will have cavity filled is 0.2 and the probability that he will have tooth extracted as well as cavity filled is 0.02. based on the above information answer the following questions.

- (i) What are the chances that he will have his tooth extracted or cavity filled ?
- (ii) What are the chances that he will have his tooth extracted only ?
- (iii) What are the chances that he will have his cavity filled only?

Solution: (i) $P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cap B)$

$$P(A \cup B) = 0.05 + 0.2 - 0.02 = 0.23$$

(ii) $P(A \text{ Only}) = P(A) - P(A \cap B) = 0.05 - 0.02 = .03$

(iii) $P(B \text{ Only}) = P(B) - P(A \cap B) = 0.2 - 0.02 = 0.18$

Question 6. A team of medical students doing their internship have to assist during surgeries at a city hospital. The probability of surgeries rated as very complex, routine , simple and very simple are 0.15, 0.20, 0.31 ,0.26 , 0.08 respectively. Based on the above information find the [probability of

- (i) complex or very complex.
- (ii) Neither very complex nor very simple.
- (iii) routine or complex.

Solution- Consider the following events for surgery A=Very complex, B= Complex, C=Routine, D =Simple, E =Very simple.

$P(A)=0.15$, $P(B)=0.20$, $P(C)=0.31$, $P(D)=0.26$, $P(E)=0.08$ Clearly A,B,C,D and E are mutually exclusive events.

(i) $P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B) = 0.15 + 0.20 = 0.35$

(ii) $P(\overline{A \cap E}) = P(\overline{A \cap E}) = 1 - P(A \cap E) = 1 - \{P(A) + P(E)\} = P(\overline{A \cap E}) = 1 - \{0.15 + 0.08\}$

$$P(\overline{A \cap E}) = 1 - 0.23 = 0.77$$

(iii) $P(C \cup B) = P(C) + P(B) = 0.31 + 0.20 = 0.51$.

EXERCISES AND ANSWERS

<https://drive.google.com/file/d/1xjsglTxW7hocCOJyT5PQBU3RZpn3Znv2/view?usp=sharing>

SAMPLE PAPERS(2026 -27)

https://drive.google.com/file/d/1LsEx2JGFFQWTc93ssVBoE1MXGNuP3_G8/view?usp=sharing

INTERACTIVE WORKSHEETS

https://drive.google.com/drive/folders/1Biytgkhw6nWq_FBcT1-tCAHH1golu6Bo?usp=sharing

USEFUL LINKS

CURRRICULUM (2026 -27)

https://cbseacademic.nic.in/curriculum_2027.html

NCERT TEXT BOOK

<https://ncert.nic.in/textbook.php?kcmh1=0-14>

CLASS 11 MATHEMATICS LAB MANNUAL- NCERT

<https://ncert.nic.in/science-laboratory-manual.php>

CLASS 11 MATHEMATICS – VIDEO LESSONS(NCERT)

<https://www.youtube.com/@NCERTOFFICIAL/search?query=CLASS%2011%20MATHEMATICS>

ANCIENT INDIAN MATHEMATICIANS

<https://www.youtube.com/@NCERTOFFICIAL/search?query=ANCIENT%20INDIAN%20MATHEMATICIANS>